



**केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन, राँची संभाग**

**KENDRIYA VIDYALAYA SANGATHAN, RANCHI REGION**



**सामाजिक विज्ञान ( 087 ) / SOCIAL SCIENCE ( 087 )**

**अध्ययन सामग्री / STUDY MATERIAL**

**(अंग्रेजी / English)**

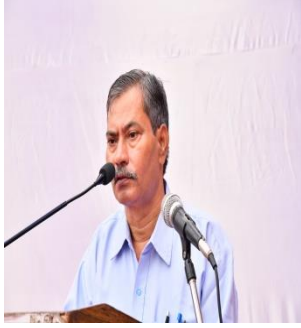
**कक्षा :- 10 वीं / CLASS :- X<sup>th</sup>**

**सत्र / SESSION :- 2023-24**

## हमारे संरक्षक / Our Patron



श्री डी. पी. पटेल / Shri D.P. Patel  
उपायुक्त, कें. वि. संगठन, क्षे. का., राँची Deputy commissioner, KVS, RO, Ranchi



श्री सुरेश सिंह, सहायक आयुक्त,  
कें. वि. संगठन, क्षे. का., राँची  
श्री सुरेश सिंह, AC, KVS, RO, Ranchi



श्रीमती सुजाता मिश्र, सहायक आयुक्त,  
कें. वि. संगठन, क्षे. का.,  
Smt. Sujata Mishra, AC, KVS, RO, Ranchi



श्री बलेन्द्र कुमार, सहायक आयुक्त,  
कें. वि. संगठन, क्षे. का., राँची  
Shri Balendra Kumar, AC, KVS, RO, Ranchi

## हमारे संरक्षक / Our Patron



श्री डी. पी. पटेल / Shri D.P. Patel

उपायुक्त, कें. वि. संगठन, क्षे. का., राँची Deputy commissioner, KVS, RO, Ranchi

### उपायुक्त महोदय का संदेश

केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन, राँची संभाग के 12वीं कक्षा के विद्यार्थियों हेतु छात्र सहायता सामग्री प्रस्तुत करते हुए मुझे अपार हर्ष हो रहा है। बारहवीं कक्षा के छात्रों, यह सामग्री आपकी आवश्यकताओं को ध्यान में रखते हुए तैयार की गई है। जब आप परीक्षा की तैयारी के अंतिम चरण में होते हैं तब आप एक स्थान पर सभी संभावित प्रश्नों को देख अपने श्रम को एकाग्र कर पाते हैं। इस सहायता सामग्री से प्रश्नों को दोहराना और अभ्यास करना सहज होगा। जब आप आवंटित समय में प्रश्न पत्र पूरा करने की अपनी क्षमता का परीक्षण करना चाहते हों या जब आप अध्ययन करते समय कोई प्रश्न देखते हों तब यह सहायक सामग्री आपकी सहायता हेतु होगा। तैयारी करते समय कभी-कभी तत्काल उत्तर की आवश्यकता है, लेकिन पाठ्य-पुस्तक से खोजने और पढ़ने में समय लगेगा। वैसी स्थिति में जब आप कम समय में पूरी अवधारणा या विचार को समझना और जानना चाहते हैं तब यह पतली सी सामग्री आपको तुरंत परेशानी से बचा लेगी। यह पिछले सीबीएसई बोर्ड परीक्षा के पेपर और प्रतियोगी परीक्षा के किसी प्रश्न को जानने और समझने में मदद करेगा।

अपने विषयों में विशेषज्ञता रखने वाले समर्पित और अनुभवी शिक्षकों की एक टीम ने कड़ी मेहनत के बाद इस सामग्री को तैयार किया है। केवल उन्हीं वस्तुओं को शामिल करने का ध्यान रखा गया है जो प्रासंगिक हैं और पाठ्य-पुस्तक के अतिरिक्त हैं। इस सामग्री को एनसीईआरटी पाठ्य पुस्तक के विकल्प के रूप में नहीं लिया जाना चाहिए बल्कि इसे इसके पूरक के रूप में डिज़ाइन किया गया है। छात्रों की सहायता सामग्री में आपके लिए आवश्यक सभी महत्वपूर्ण पहलू हैं: प्रश्न पत्र का डिज़ाइन, पाठ्यक्रम, सभी इकाइयों/अध्यायों या बिंदुओं में अवधारणाएं, प्रत्येक अध्याय से नमूना परीक्षण आदि। मुझे यकीन है कि सहायक सामग्री का उपयोग छात्रों और शिक्षकों दोनों द्वारा किया जाएगा और मुझे विश्वास है कि यह सामग्री आपको अपनी परीक्षाओं में अच्छा प्रदर्शन करने में मदद करेगी। आनेवाली परीक्षा के लिए शुभकामनाओं के साथ आप यह अवश्य याद रखें मेहनत का कोई विकल्प नहीं है।

श्री डी.पी.पटेल

उपायुक्त

केन्द्रीय विद्यालय संगठन, क्षेत्रीय कार्यालय, राँची



**श्रीमती सुजाता मिश्र, सहायक आयुक्त,  
कें. वि. संगठन, क्षे. का., राँची  
Smt. Sujata Mishra, AC, KVS, RO, Ranchi**

### **सहायक आयुक्त का संदेश**

**Dear Students,**

**It's a matter of great pleasure that students of Ranchi region are being presented an exclusive as well as updated study material prepared by subject teachers of Ranchi region under the guidance and supervision of subject expert principals of Ranchi region.**

**The material has been designed keeping in mind latest curriculum and exam pattern of CBSE. A lot of effort has been undertaken to keep the study material precise, relevant and comprehensive so as to ensure conceptual clarity as well as minimum level of learning .**

**The content is crisp along with use of mind map and flow chart to enable quick and effective revision.**

**Hope this study material will help you prepare for the board exam with confidence .Work hard, manage your time prudently and be sincere in your efforts. ....Success is all yours .**

**Best of luck .**

**Sujata Mishra**

**Asst. Commissioner**

**KVS, RO, Ranchi**

## संपादक मण्डल / EDITORIAL BOARD

विषय संयोजक / :- श्री मंटू कुमार / Shri Mantu Kumar  
Subject Co-ordinator प्राचार्य, कें. वि. सी.आर.पी.एफ., राँची / Principal, K.V. CRPF,  
Ranchi

सहायक विषय संयोजक / :- श्रीमती निर्मला राय सिंह / Smt. Nirmala Sita Rai  
Asst. Subject Co-ordinator प्र.स्ना.शि. (सा. वि.) , कें. वि. हिनू प्र. पा., राँची / TGT (So.  
Sc. ), K.V. Hinoo 1<sup>st</sup> Shift, Ranchi

मॉडरेशन समिति / Moderation Committee

01. श्री कुमार मयंक / Shri Kumar Mayank  
प्र.स्ना.शि. (सा. वि.) , कें. वि. बरकाकाना, राँची / TGT ( So. Sc. ), K.V. Barkakana
02. श्रीमती सरोज एक्का / Smt. Saroj Ekka  
प्र.स्ना.शि. (सा. वि.) , कें. वि. एच.ई.सी., राँची / TGT ( So. Sc. ), K.V. HEC , Ranchi
03. श्रीमती / Smt. Roseline Tigga  
प्र.स्ना.शि. (सा. वि.) , कें. वि. सी.आर.पी.एफ., राँची / TGT ( So. Sc. ), K.V. CRPF,  
Ranchi
04. श्रीमती निर्मला राय सिंह / Smt. Nirmala Rai Singh  
प्र.स्ना.शि. (सा. वि.) , कें. वि. हिनू प्र. पा., राँची / TGT ( So. Sc. ), K.V. Hinoo 1<sup>st</sup>  
Shift, Ranchi

अध्ययन सामग्री कार्य / Study Material Work

S.NO	NAME OF THE TEACHER	NAME OF THE SCHOOL	CHAPTER
1	Mr B.S. Purty	KV Bokaro No. 1	The Rise of Nationalism in Europe
2	Dr. Gopal Jee	KV Dhanbad No. 2	Nationalism in India
3	Mrs Swati Malika Kujur	KV Godda	The Making of Global world
4	Mr.Ranjeet kumar	KV Simdega	The age of Industrialisation
5	Mr.Shashank Shekhar	KV Garhwa	Print Culture and the Modern world
6	Mrs.Rina Rani Sijui	KV Tatanagar	Resources and Development
7	Mrs.Draksha Bano	KV Maithon Dam	Forest and Wildlife resources
8	Mrs.Rashmi Lakra	K V Khunti	Water Resources
9	Mrs Anju Kumari	KV HEC ,RANCHI	Agriculture
10	Mr.Manoj Kumar	KV Bokaro Tharmal	Mineral and Energy Resources
11	Mr.Sudhir Kumar	KV Megahahatuburu	Manufacturing industries
12	Mr.Bimal Dev Narayan	KV Hinoo 2 <sup>nd</sup> shift Ranchi	Lifeline of National Economy (only Map)
13	Mr.Ramchandra Mahali	KV Tatanagar	Power-sharing
14	Mrs. Punam kumari	KV Dhanbad No. 1	Federalism
15	Mrs. Shalini Kujur	KV CRPF Ranchi	Gender, Religion and Caste
16	Mrs. Geeta kumari	KV Sahibganj	Political Parties
17	Mrs. Kamla Agance Minj	KV Bokaro No. 1	Outcome of Democracy
18	Mr.Kumud Ranjan	KV Surda	Development
19	Mrs Neelam Toppo	KV Jamtara	Sectors of Indian economy
20	Mr. Rahul Kumar	KV Madhupur	Money and Credit
21	Mr. Koushal Kishore	KV Ramgarh Cantt	Globalisation and the Indian economy

## Index

S.N.	Chapter Name	Page No.
1	The Rise of Nationalism in Europe	1-9
2	Nationalism in India	9-21
3	The Making of Global world	22-24
4	Print Culture and the Modern world	25-33
5	Resources and Development	33-40
6	Forest and Wildlife resources	40-46
7	Water Resources	46-53
8	Agriculture	54-61
9	Mineral and Energy Resources	62-72
10	Manufacturing industries	73-81
11	Lifeline of National Economy (only Map)	82-82
12	Power-sharing	83-89
13	Federalism	89-97
14	Gender, Religion and Caste	97-105
15	Political Parties	106-112
16	Outcome of Democracy	112-118
17	Development	119-126
18	Sectors of Indian economy	126-133
19	Money and Credit	133-142
20	Globalisation and the Indian economy	142-145

## Chapter 1- The Rise of Nationalism in Europe

### Introduction: -

The concept "Nationalism" Means The feeling of togetherness or common identity and common belongingness.

During nineteenth century the idea of Nationalism emerged as a force which brought huge changes in the political and mental world of Europe. The French Revolution of 1789 paved the way for modern nation- state in France.

### The French Revolution and the idea of the Nation state

French Revolution of 1789 was the first clear expression of nationalism.

To emphasise the nation as a united community the French Revolution introduced new ideas like La patrie (the father land) and le citoyen (the citizen), and a new French flag amongst the French people.

It introduced a centralised administrative system with uniform law for all citizens.

Regional dialects were discouraged and French became the common language in the country.

New hymn composed and oaths taken. Internal customs duties and dues were abolished.

### Napoleon code

Napoleon destroyed democracy in France, but he incorporated revolutionary principles by introducing Civil code of 1804, which came to be known as the Napoleon code.

\*The code removed all privileges based on birth.

\* Equality before law was established.

\* Simplified administrative measures.

\* Abolished feudal system.

\* Freed peasants from serfdom and manorial dues.

\* Guild system was removed and transport and communication system improved.

Napoleon took away political freedom, increased taxes, imposed censorship and forced people to join French army.

### The making of Nationalism in Europe

Germany, Italy and Switzerland were divided into kingdoms, duchies and cantons whose rulers had their autonomous territories.

Some important factors led to the rise of nationalism in Europe are...

- The rise of new middle class.
- The spread of the ideology of liberalism.
- The new spirit of conservatism and the Treaty of Vienna.
- The rise of Revolutionaries.

### Liberal Nationalism

The term ' Liberalism' means Free. For the new middle classes, liberalism stood for freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law.

In France, the right to vote and to get elected was granted exclusively to property-owning person.

Men without properties and women were excluded from this right. In the economic sphere, liberalism stood for the freedom of markets and the abolition of state-imposed restrictions on the movement of goods and capital.

In 1834, a customs union or Zollverein was formed at the initiative of Prussia and joined by most of the German states. The Union abolished tariff barriers and reduced the number of currencies from over thirty to two.

### Treaty of Vienna (1815)

In 1815, representatives of the European powers - Britain, Russia, Prussia and Austria met in Vienna to draw up a settlement for Europe.

The Bourbon dynasty was restored to power and France lost the territories it had annexed under Napoleon.

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

**1. Which of the following countries was not the representative of the European powers?**

- (a) Britain                      (b) Russia                      (c) Prussia                      (d) Switzerland

**Answer:** (d) Switzerland

**2. The first great revolution which gave the clear idea of nationalism with its core words: 'Liberty, Equality and Fraternity' was:**

- (a) The Russian Revolution                      (b) The French Revolution  
(c) The American Revolution                      (d) India's First War of Independence

**Answer:** (b) The French Revolution

**3. The Civil Code of 1804 in France is usually known as:**

- (a) The French Revolutionary Code                      (b) Napoleonic Code  
(c) European Imperial Code                      (d) The French Civil Code

**Answer:** (b) Napoleonic Code

**4. Who was described as 'the most dangerous enemy of our social evil'?**

- (a) Otto von Bismarck                      (b) Giuseppe Mazzini  
(c) Metternich                      (d) Johann Gottfried Herder

**Answer:** (b) Giuseppe Mazzini

**5. The Treaty of recognized Greece as an independent nation:**

- (a) Vienna 1815    (b) Warsaw 1814    (c) Constantinople 1832                      (d) Leipzig 1813

**Answer:** (c) Constantinople 1832

**6. Who said 'When France sneezes, the rest of Europe catches cold'?**

- (a) Garibaldi                      (b) Bismarck                      (c) Mazzini                      (d) Duke Metternich

**Answer:** (d) Duke Metternich

**7. Who was the architect of unification of Germany?**

- (a) Otto Von Bismarck                      (b) Victor Emmanuel II  
(c) Count Cavour                      (d) Kaiser William I of Prussia

**Answer:** (a) Otto Von Bismarck

**8. The allegory of the German nation who wears a crown of oak leaves was a:**

- (a) Marianne                      (b) Union Jack                      (c) Britannia                      (d) Germania

**Answer:** (d) Germania

**9. A large part of Balkan region was under the control of:**

- (a) Russian empire    (b) Ottoman empire    (c) German empire    (d) Habsburg empire

**Answer:** (b) Ottoman empire

**10. The liberal nationalism stands for:**

- (a) freedom for the individual and equality before law.  
(b) preservation of autocracy and clerical privileges.  
(c) freedom for only male members of society and equality before law.  
(d) freedom only for senior citizens.

**Answer:** (a) freedom for the individual and equality before law.

**11. Who among the following formed the secret society called 'Young Italy'?**

- (a) Otto Von Bismarck                      (b) Giuseppe Mazzini



(c) Metternich

(d) Johann Gottfried Herder

**Answer:** (b) Giuseppe Mazzini

**12. The only one state ruled by an Italian Princely House was**

(a) Sardina – Piedmont

(b) Papal

(c) Tuscany

(d) Venetia

**Answer:** (a) Sardina – Piedmont

**13-15 . Mark the correct choice as :(Assertion Reason Based Questions)**

**A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.**

**B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of assertion.**

**C. A is true but R is false.**

**D. A is false and R is true.**

**13. Assertion:** In the areas conquered by Napoleon the reactions of the local population were mixed.

**Reason:** Increased taxation, censorship, forced to join into French armies, all seemed to outweigh the advantages of the administrative changes.

**Answer:** A. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

**14. Assertion:** In 1834, Zollverein was formed at the initiative of Prussia.

**Reason:** The basic aim was to transfer sovereignty from the monarchy to a body of citizens.

**Answer:** C. A is true but R is false.

**15. Assertion:** The first clear expression of nationalism came with the French Revolution in 1789.

**Reason:** The act of Union between England and Scotland resulted in the formation of the United Kingdom.

**Answer:** B. Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of assertion.

**16. Group of the people of the world were identify through:**

(a) Symbols

(b) Allegories

(c) Language

(d) Flags and national costumes

**Answer:** (d) Flags and national costumes

**17. The idea of la patrie means:**

(a) Fatherland

(b) Motherland

(c) The citizen

(d) A nation

**Answer:** (a) Fatherland

**18. Which of the following was not the principle of Napoleonic Code?**

(a) Did away all privileges base on birth.

(b) Securing right to property.

(c) Abolished feudal system.

(d) Ensured right to equality.

**Answer:** (d) Ensured right to equality

**19. Match the following:**

Column A		Column B	
i)	Yong Italy	(a)	Cavour
ii)	German Emperor	(b)	Giuseppe Mazzini
iii)	Italian Nationalist	(c)	Otto Van Bismarck
iv)	German Nationalist	(d)	William I

**Options:-**

(a) i-a, ii-b, iii-c, iv-d

(b) i-b, ii-c, iii-d, iv-a

(c) i-b, ii-d, iii-a, iv-c

(d) i-c, ii-d, iii-a, iv-b

**Answer:** (c) i-b, ii-d, iii-a, iv-c

**20. Which one of the following is not true regarding Romanticism and Nationalism feeling in Europe?**

- (a) It was a culture moment which sought to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiment.
- (b) The romantic artists and poets generally did not criticised the glorification of reason and science.
- (c) It focused on emotions and mystical feelings.
- (d) Their effort was to create a sense of a shared collective heritage.

**Answer:** (b) The romantic artists and poets generally did not criticised the glorification of reason and science.

### **Very Short Answer Type Questions**

(2)

#### **21. What was Zollverein? Why was it formed?**

**Answer:** In 1834, a customs union or Zollverein was formed at the initiative of Prussia. It was joined by most of the German States. It formulated many rules for free trade and economic cooperation among the German states. It abolished the tariff barriers and reduced the number of currencies from over thirty to only two.

#### **22. Mention two steps that the French Revolution took to create collective identity.**

**Answer:** A new French flag, a tricolour replaced the royal standard. The Estates General was renamed the National Assembly and was elected by a group of active citizens. New hymns, oaths and martyrs commemorated in the name of the nation. A central administrative system made uniform laws for the entire nation.

#### **23. What was the concept of liberal nationalism which developed in 19th century?**

**Answer:** The term 'liberalism' derives from the Latin root liber, meaning free. For the new middle classes' liberalism stood for freedom for the individual and equality of all before the law.

#### **24. Mention any two proposals of the Vienna congress of 1815.**

**Answer:** (i) The Bourbon dynasty was restored to power.  
 (ii) To prevent expansion of France in the future, a series of states were set up on the boundaries of France.

#### **25. Which class promoted the idea of national unity in Europe?**

**Answer:** The educated liberal middle-class promoted the idea of national unity in Europe. This class was comprised of professors, schoolteachers, clerks and members of the commercial middle class.

#### **26. Who was Frederic Sorrieu?**

**Answer:** Frederic Sorrieu was a French artist who prepared a series of four prints in 1848 visualizing his dream of a world made up of 'democratic and social Republics'. In his utopian vision, the peoples of the world were grouped as distinct nations, identified through their flags and national costume.

#### **27. Why is it said that the 1830s were the years of great hardships in Europe? Explain.**

**Answer:** The decade of 1830 had brought great economic hardship or crisis in Europe due to the following reasons:

- (i) The first half of the 19th century saw an enormous increase in population all over Europe.
- (ii) Jobseekers were more and employment opportunities were less.
- (iii) People from rural areas migrated to cities and made cities over-crowded slums.

#### **28. Describe the significance of the Statue of Liberty in Frederic Sorrieu's paintings "The dream of worldwide democratic and socialist republics"?**

**Answer:** In the Sorrieu's paintings the 'Statue of Liberty' is personified as women bearing the Torch of Enlightenment in one hand and the Charter of the Rights in the other. The statue signifies the rise of nationalism to establish nation states based on democratic principles with inalienable human rights.

### **29. What was Act of Union?**

**Answer:** The Act of Union (1707) was an act between England and Scotland that resulted in the formation of the 'United Kingdom of Great Britain' meant in effect that England was able to impose its influence on Scotland.

### **30. Describe the event of the French Revolution which had influenced the people belonging to other parts of Europe.**

**Answer:** (i) Students and other members of educated middle class began to set up Jacobin clubs.  
(ii) Their activities and campaigns paved the way for the French armies which moved into Holland, Belgium, Switzerland and large parts of Italy.

### **Short Answer Type Questions**

(3)

### **31. Explain the statement, "When France Sneezes, the Rest of Europe Catches a Cold".**

**Answer:** "When France sneezes, the rest of Europe catches a cold." Metternich made this statement to describe the influence of France on other European countries. Events such as the French Revolution July 1789 influenced the rest of the Europe. The idea of liberty and democratic rights were the most important legacy of the French revolution. The first turmoil occurred in France in July 1830. At this time, the bourbon Kings were overthrown, and power was transferred to the hands of liberal revolutionaries. Influenced by the July Revolution, a spark arose in the rebellion in Brussels.

### **32. What was the role of cultural movement in the development of nationalism in Europe?**

**Answer:** Culture played an important role in creating the idea of the nation: art and poetry, stories and Music helped express and shape nationalist feelings. effort was to create a sense of a shared Collective heritage, a common cultural past, as the basis of a nation.

### **33. Like Germany Italy had a long history of political fragmentation? Explain**

**Answer:** Like Germany, Italy too had a long history of fragmentation. Italians were scattered over several dynastic states as well as the multinational Habsburg Empire. During the middle of the nineteenth century, Italy was divided into seven states of which only one Sardinia-Piedmont, was ruled by an Italian Princely house.

### **34. What changes were introduced after the French revolution in France?**

**Answer:** A centralised administrative system was put in place and it formulated uniform laws for all citizens within its territory. Internal custom duties and dues were abolished and a uniform system of weights and measures was adopted.

### **35. How had the female figures become an allegory of the nation during 19th century in Europe? Analyse.**

**Answer:** The female figure was chosen to personify the nation did not stand for any particular woman in real life. It gave the abstract idea of the nation a concrete form. Thus, the female figure became an allegory of the nation.

### **36. Explain any three reasons for the nationalist upsurge in the 19th century Europe.**

**Answer:** Reasons for the Nationalist upsurge in the 19th century Europe.

- (i) Oppression of people under absolute rulers.
- (ii) Liberal ideas spread by well-known philosophers and leaders.
- (iii) The French Revolution inspired the people to fight for freedom. The slogan 'Liberty, Equality and Fraternity' became the clarion call for the common people.
- (iv) With the outbreak of revolutionary wars, the French army and its soldiers began to carry the ideas of nationalism abroad.

### **37. Explain the conditions that were viewed as obstacles to the economic exchange and growth by the new commercial classes during the nineteenth century in Europe?**

**Answer:** The following conditions were viewed as obstacles to the economic exchange and growth by the new commercial classes during the nineteenth century in Europe:

- (i) The absence of freedom of markets.
- (ii) State-imposed restrictions on the movement of goods and capital.
- (iii) Time-consuming calculations resulting from the difference in currency, weight and measurement.

**38. Explain any three beliefs of the conservatism that emerged after 1815.**

**Answer:** Three beliefs of conservatism that emerged after 1815 were:

- (i) Established and traditional institutions of state and society like monarchy, the Church, property and family should be preserved.
- (ii) They believed in the modernization of the traditional institution to strengthen them, rather than returning to the society of pre-revolutionary days.
- (iii) Also, they believed that abolition of feudalism and serfdom and replacing it with a modern army, an efficient bureaucracy and a dynamic economy could strengthen autocratic monarchies of Europe.

**39. ‘In Britain, the formation of the nation-state was not the result of a sudden upheaval on Revolution.’ Elaborate on this statement.**

**Answer:** In Britain, the formation of a nation-state was a result of a long-drawn-out process. There was no British nation prior to the 18th century. The primary identities of the people who inhabited the British Isles were ethnic ones such as English, Welsh, Scot, or Irish. Later the English Parliament, which had seized power from the monarchy in 1688 at the end of a protracted conflict, was the instrument through which a nation-state with England at its center came to be forged. The Act of Union (1707) between England and Scotland that resulted in the formation of the ‘United Kingdom of Great Britain’ meant, in effect, that England was able to impose its influence on Scotland.

**40 How did the Greek War of Independence mobilise nationalist feelings among the educated elite across Europe? Explain.**

**Answer:** Greek war of independence mobilized the nationalist feeling in Europe through the following ways:

- (i) Greece was viewed as a part of Europe that had been annexed by Ottomans and now needed to be liberated.
- (ii) Greece perceived as the foundation and cradle of civilisation in Europe by poets and artists and this led to nationalist consciousness.
- (iii) Greek nationalists received support from other Greeks living in exile.

**Source Based Questions**

**(1+1+2=4)**

**41. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

In 1848, a revolution led by the educated middle classes was underway. Men and women of liberal middle class demanded creation of a nation- state on parliamentary principles - a constitution and freedom of association. A large number of political associations came together in Frankfurt to vote for an all-German National Assembly. On 18 may 1848,831 elected representatives marched to take their places in the Frankfurt parliament convinced in the Church of St Paul. The Constitution drafted for German nation was headed by a monarchy, subject to a parliament. The crown was offered to Friedrich Wilhem IV, King of Prussia but he rejected it and joined other monarchs to oppose the elected assembly. The Middle Class dominated the Parliament and a large number of women Participated in liberal movement.

Women formed their own Political associations, founded newspaper and took part in political meeting and demonstrations, but they were still denied suffrage rights during the election of the Assembly.

**Answer these questions:**

**(i) Where was the Frankfurt parliament held?**

**Answer:** Frankfurt parliament was held in the Church of St Paul.

**(ii) What was the demand of Men and women of liberal middle class people?**

**Answer:** Men and women of liberal middle class demanded creation of a nation- state on parliamentary principles - a constitution and freedom of association.

**(iii) How did women participate in liberal movement?**

**Answer:** Women formed their own Political associations, founded newspaper and took part in political meeting and demonstrations.

### **Long Answer Questions**

**(5)**

**42. Who hosted ‘Vienna Congress’ in 1815? Analyse the main changes by the ‘Vienna Treaty.’**

**Answer:** A New-Conservatism prevailed after the defeat of Napoleon in 1815. The new conservative order was established through the Treaty of Vienna 1815. The objectives of the Treaty of Vienna 1815 were to undo the victories of Napoleon and restore Europe to the revolutionary era with restoration of monarchies to establish a new conservative order. Congress of Vienna was hosted by the Austrian Chancellor Duke Metternich in 1815. The following changes were made to redraw or change the map of Europe.: The Bourbon Dynasty, which had been deposed during the French Revolution, was restored to power and France lost the territories it had annexed. A series of states were set up on the boundaries of France to prevent the French expansion in future. Thus, The kingdom of the Netherlands, which included Belgium, was set up in the north and Genoa was added to Piedmont in the south. Prussia was given important new territories on its western frontiers, while Austria was given control of northern Italy. The German confederation of 39 states that had been set up by Napoleon was left untouched.

**43. Describe the process of Unification of Italy.**

**Answer:** Unification of Italy:

- (i) During the middle of the 19th century, Italy was divided into seven states of which only one, Sardinia-Piedmont, was ruled by an Italian princely house.
- (ii) The unification process was led by three revolutionaries—Giuseppe Mazzini, Count Camillo de Cavour, and Giuseppe Garibaldi
- (iii) During 1830, Mazzini decided to unite Italy. He had formed a secret society ‘Young Italy’ to achieve his goal.
- (iv) After earlier failures in 1831 and 1848, King Victor Emmanuel II took to unify the Italian states through wars.
- (v) Through a tactful diplomatic alliance with France by Cavour, Sardinia-Piedmont succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces in 1859.
- (vi) After earlier failures in 1831 and 1848, King Victor Emmanuel II took to unify the Italian states through wars.
- (vii) Through a tactful diplomatic alliance with France by Cavour, Sardinia-Piedmont succeeded in defeating the Austrian forces in 1859.
- (viii) Under the leadership of Garibaldi armed volunteers marched into South Italy in 1860 and the Kingdom of the Two Sicilies and succeeded in winning the support of the local peasants in order to drive out the Spanish rulers.
- (ix) In 1861, Victor Emmanuel II was proclaimed king of united Italy.

#### **44. How did nationalism align with imperialism to become the cause of the First World War?**

**Explain.**

**Answer:** The Balkan states had become the region of intense rivalry among the Balkan states themselves for independence as well as the big powers for expansion and influence in the region.

Reasons for the growth of nationalist tension in Balkan region:

- (i) The Balkan was a region of geographical and ethnic variations comprising of modern-day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro. The inhabitants were called Slavs.
- (ii) The spread of romantic nationalism led to its disintegration.
- (iii) Different Slavic nationalities struggled to define their identity.
- (iv) Balkan region became a region of intense conflict over expansion of territory.
- (v) At the same time, the great European Powers –Russia, Germany, England and Austria-Hungary were keen on taking the control of the Balkan region, since it was important from trade point of view.
- (vi) This led to the series of wars in the region and finally became the cause of the First World War.

#### **45. Briefly trace the geographical and ethnic variations of Balkan region. Why did this region become politically very explosive?**

**Answer:** (i) The Balkans was a region of geographical and ethnic variations comprising modern-day Romania, Bulgaria, Albania, Greece, Macedonia, Croatia, Bosnia-Herzegovina, Slovenia, Serbia and Montenegro.

- (ii) The inhabitants of these regions were known as Slavs.
- (iii) A large part of Balkans was under the control of the Ottoman empire while some other parts were under the control of Russia and Austria causing a complex problem.
- (iv) The spread of the ideas of Romantic nationalism in the Balkans together with the disintegration of the Ottoman Empire made the region very explosive.
- (v) The Balkan area became an area of intense conflict as different Slavic nationalities struggled for their independence. The Balkan people based their claim for independence or political rights on nationality and desired to win back their long lost freedom.
- (vi) The Balkan region became a region of intense conflict over expansion of territory. The Balkan states were fiercely jealous of each other and each hoped to gain more territory at the expense of others.
- (vii) At the same time the Balkan region also became the source of big power rivalry among the European powers over trade, colonies and military might.
- (viii) The big powers – Russia, Germany, England, and Austria-Hungary—were keen on countering the hold of other powers over the Balkans, and extending its own control over the area.
- (ix) This led to the series of wars in the region and finally became the cause of the First World War.

#### **46. How did Romanticism pave the way for Nationalism in Europe? Explain.**

**Answer:** Romanticism was a cultural movement which sought to develop a particular form of nationalist sentiments in the following ways.

- (i) Critical approach towards reason and science: Romantic artists criticized the glorification of reason and science and focused on emotions, intuitions and mystical feeling.
- (ii) Folk culture as the spirit of the nation: Johann Gottfried Herder claimed that through folk songs, folk poetry and folk dances, the true spirit of nation could be popularized. The Polish composer Karol Kurpinski celebrated and popularised the Polish nationalist struggle through his operas and music, by turning folk dances into nationalist symbols.

(iii) Emphasis on vernacular language: They gave emphasis on vernacular language to recover the national spirit and to carry the modern nationalist message to large audience who were mostly illiterate.

(iv) Language as a symbol of national resistance: Language also played an important role in developing nationalist sentiments. For example, it was mainly used as a weapon of national resistance when the Polish language was forced out of schools and the Russian language was imposed everywhere in Poland.

#### **47 . Describe the process of unification of Germany.**

**Answer:** (i) In the 1800s, nationalist feelings were strong in the hearts of the middle-class Germans.

(ii) During the Vienna Congress in 1815, Germany was identified as a loose confederation of 39 states. They united in 1848 to create a nation-state out of the numerous German states.

(iii) Prussia soon became the leader of German unification movement.

(iv) Chief Minister of Prussia Otto von Bismarck was the architect of the process with the support from the Prussian army and bureaucracy.

(v) The unification process was completed after Prussia won wars with Austria, Denmark and France over a time period of seven years.

(vi) In January 1871, the Prussian King, William I, was proclaimed the German Emperor in a ceremony held at Versailles.

---

---

## **Chapter 2 -Nationalism in India**

### **Summary: -**

#### **The First World War, Khilafat and Non-Cooperation**

In India, the growth of modern nationalism is connected to the anti-colonial movement. Due to colonialism, many different groups shared bonds together, which were forged by the Congress under Mahatma Gandhi.

The war created a new economic and political situation in the years after 1919. Income tax was introduced, and the prices of custom duties were doubled between 1913 and 1918, which led to a very difficult life for common people. In 1918-19 crops failed in India, resulting in a shortage of food accompanied by an influenza epidemic. At this stage, a new leader appeared and suggested a new mode of struggle.

#### **Why Non-Cooperation?**

According to Mahatma Gandhi, British rule was established in India with the cooperation of Indians. Non-cooperation movement is proposed in stages. It should begin with the surrender of titles that the government awarded and a boycott of civil services, the army, police, courts and legislative councils, schools and foreign goods. After many hurdles and campaigning between the supporters and opponents of the movement, finally, in December 1920, the Non-Cooperation Movement was adopted.

#### **Differing Strands within the Movement**

In January 1921, the Non-Cooperation-Khilafat Movement began. In this movement, various social groups participated, but the term meant different things to different people.

#### **The Movement in the Towns**

The middle class started the movement, and thousands of students, teachers, and headmasters left government-controlled schools and colleges, and lawyers gave up their legal practices. On the economic front, the effects of non-cooperation were more dramatic. The production of Indian textile mills and handlooms went up when people started boycotting foreign goods. However, this movement slowed down due to a variety of reasons, such as Khadi clothes being expensive and fewer Indian

institutions for students and teachers to choose from, so they went back to government schools, and lawyers joined back government courts.

### **Rebellion in the Countryside**

The Non-Cooperation Movement spread to the countryside, where peasants and tribals were developing in different parts of India. The peasant movement started against talukdars and landlords who demanded high rents and a variety of other cesses. It demanded a reduction of revenue, abolition of begar and social boycott of oppressive landlords.

In the early 1920s, a militant guerrilla movement started spreading in the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh. The government started closing down forest areas, due to which their livelihood was affected. Finally, the hill people revolted, which was led by Alluri Sitaram Raju, who claimed that he had a variety of special powers.

### **Swaraj in the Plantations**

For plantation workers in Assam, freedom meant the right to move freely in and out and retain a link with the village from which they had come. Under the Inland Emigration Act of 1859, plantation workers were not permitted to leave the tea gardens without permission. After they heard of the Non-Cooperation Movement, thousands of workers left the plantations and headed home. But unfortunately, they never reached their destination and were caught by the police and brutally beaten up.

### **Towards Civil Disobedience**

In February 1922, the Non-Cooperation Movement was withdrawn because Mahatma Gandhi felt that it was turning violent. Some of the leaders wanted to participate in elections to the provincial councils. Swaraj Party was formed by CR Das and Motilal Nehru. In the late 1920s, Indian politics was again shaped because of two factors. The first effect was the worldwide economic depression, and the second effect was the falling agricultural prices. The Statutory Commission was set up to look into the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes. In 1928, Simon Commission arrived in India, and it was greeted by the slogan 'Go back, Simon'. In December 1929, under the presidency of Jawaharlal Nehru, the Lahore Congress formalised the demand for 'Purna Swaraj' or full independence for India. It was declared that 26 January 1930 would be celebrated as Independence Day.

### **The Salt March and the Civil Disobedience Movement**

On 31 January 1930, Mahatma Gandhi sent a letter to Viceroy Irwin stating eleven demands. Among the demands, the most stirring of all was the demand to abolish the salt tax, which is consumed by the rich and the poor. The demands needed to be fulfilled by 11 March, or else Congress would start a civil disobedience campaign. The famous salt march was started by Mahatma Gandhi, accompanied by 78 of his trusted volunteers. The march was over 240 miles, from Gandhiji's ashram in Sabarmati to the Gujarati coastal town of Dandi. On 6 April, he reached Dandi, and ceremonially violated the law, manufacturing salt by boiling seawater. This marked the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement.

The movement spread across the country and salt law was broken in different parts of the country. Foreign clothes were boycotted, peasants refused to pay revenue, and in many places, forest law was violated. In April 1930, Abdul Ghaffar Khan, a devout disciple of Mahatma Gandhi, was arrested. Mahatma Gandhi was arrested a month later, which led to attacks on all structures that symbolised British rule. By witnessing the horrific situation, Mahatma Gandhi decided to call off the movement and entered into a pact with Irwin on 5 March 1931. Gandhi-Irwin Pact, Gandhiji consented to participate in a Round Table Conference in London. When the conference broke down, Mahatma Gandhi returned to India disappointed and relaunched the Civil Disobedience Movement. It continued for almost a year, but by 1934 it lost its momentum.

### **The Limits of Civil Disobedience**



Dalits, addressed as untouchables, were not moved by the concept of Swaraj. Mahatma Gandhi used to call them Harijans or the children of God, without whom swaraj could not be achieved. He organised satyagraha for the untouchables, but they were keen on a different political solution to the problems of the community. They demanded reserved seats in educational institutions and a separate electorate.

Dr B.R. Ambedkar, who organised the Dalits into the Depressed Classes Association in 1930, clashed with Mahatma Gandhi at the second Round Table Conference by demanding separate electorates for Dalits. The Poona Pact of September 1932 gave the Depressed Classes (later to be known as the Scheduled Castes) reserved seats in provincial and central legislative councils. After the decline of the Non-Cooperation-Khilafat movement, Muslims felt alienated from Congress, due to which the relations between Hindus and Muslims worsened.

Muhammad Ali Jinnah was willing to give up the demand for separate electorates if Muslims were assured reserved seats in the Central Assembly and representation in proportion to the population in the Muslim-dominated provinces. Nevertheless, the hope of resolving the issue at the All-Parties Conference in 1928 disappeared when M.R. Jayakar of the Hindu Mahasabha strongly opposed efforts at compromise.

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

**1. Who was the writer of the book ‘Hind Swaraj’?**

- (a) Rabindranath Tagore (b) B.R. Ambedkar (c) Mahatma Gandhi (d) Jawahar Lai Nehru

**Ans – (c) Mahatma Gandhi**

**2. Khilafat Committee was formed in 1919 in the city of**

- (a) Bombay (b) Calcutta (c) Lucknow (d) Amritsar

**Ans – (a) Bombay**

**3. The Non-cooperation Khilafat Movement began in**

- (a) January 1921 (b) February 1922 (c) December 1929 (d) April 1919

**Ans – (a) January, 1921**

**4. Which of the following was the reason for calling off the Non-cooperation Movement by Gandhiji?**

- (a) Pressure from the British Government (b) Second Round Table Conference  
(c) Gandhiji’s arrest (d) Chauri-Chaura incident

**Ans – (d) Chauri-Chaura incident**

**5. Baba Ramchandra, a sanyasi, was the leader of which of the following movements?**

- (a) Khilafat Movement (b) Militant Guerrilla Movement of Andhra Pradesh  
(c) Peasants’ Movement of Awadh (d) Plantation Workers’ Movement in Assam

**Ans – (c) Peasants’ Movement of Awadh**

**6. Who set up the ‘Oudh Kisan Sabha’?**

- (a) Alluri Sitaram Raju (b) Jawahar Lai Nehru and Baba Ramchandra  
(c) Jawaharlal Nehru and Shaikat Ali (d) Mahatma Gandhi

**Ans - (b) Jawahar Lai Nehru and Baba Ramchandra**

**7. Under the presidency of Jawahar Lal Nehru, the Lahore Congress Session of 1929 formalised the demand of**

- (a) Abolition of Salt Tax (b) ‘Purna Swaraj’ or complete independence  
(c) Boycott of Simon Commission (d) Separate electorate for the ‘Dalits’

**Ans - (b) ‘Purna Swaraj’ or complete independence**

**8. The ‘Simon Commission’ was boycotted because**

- (a) There was no British Member in the Commission.  
(b) It demanded separate electorates for Hindus and Muslims.

(c) There was no Indian Member in the Commission.

(d) It favoured the Muslims over the Hindus.

**Ans - (c) There was no Indian Member in the Commission.**

**9. A form of demonstration used in the Non-cooperation Movement in which people block the entrance to a shop, factory or office is**

(a) Boycott

(b) Begar

(c) Picketing

(d) Bandh

**Ans - (c) Picketing**

**10. Who formed the 'Swaraj Party' within the Congress?**

(a) Jawahar Lal Nehru and Motilal Nehru

(b) Abdul Ghaffar Khan and Mahatma Gandhi

(c) Jawahar Lai Nehru and Subhas Chandra Bose

(d) C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru

**Ans - (d) C.R. Das and Motilal Nehru**

**11. Who founded the 'Depressed Classes Association' in 1930?**

(a) Alluri Sitaram Raju

(b) C.R. Das

(c) M.R. Jayakar

(d) Dr B.R. Ambedkar

**Ans - (d) Dr B.R. Ambedkar**

**12. Which party did not boycott the Council elections held in the year 1921?**

(a) Swaraj Party

(b) Justice Party

(c) Muslim League

(d) Congress Party

**Ans - (b) Justice Party**

**13. What do you mean by the term 'Begar'?**

(a) An Act to prevent plantation workers to leave the tea gardens without permission

(b) The forced recruitment of soldiers in rural areas during World War I.

(c) Labour that villagers were forced to contribute without any payment.

(d) Refusal to deal and associate with people or participate in activities as a form of protest.

**Ans - (c) Labour that villagers were forced to contribute without any payment.**

**14. From where did Mahatma Gandhi start his famous 'Salt March' on 12th March 1930?**

(a) Dandi

(b) Chauri-Chaura

(c) Sabarmati

(d) Surat

**Ans - (c) Sabarmati**

**15. Which industrialist attacked colonial control over Indian economy and supported the Civil Disobedience Movement?**

(a) Dinshaw Petit

(b) Purshottamdas Thakurdas

(c) Dwarkanath Tagore

(d) Seth Hukumchand

**Ans - (b) Purshottamdas Thakurdas**

**16. Who visualised and depicted the image of 'Bharat Mata' through a painting?**

(a) Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay

(b) Rabindranath Tagore

(c) Natesa Sastri

(d) Abanindranath Tagore

**Ans - (d) Abanindranath Tagore.**

**17. Which of the following was Mahatma Gandhi's novel method of fighting against the British?**

(a) He used violent method of stone pelting.

(b) He used arson to bum down government offices.

(c) He fought with the principle of 'an eye for an eye'.

(d) He practised open defiance of law; peaceful demonstration, satyagraha and non-violence.

**Ans - (d) He practised open defiance of law; peaceful demonstration, satyagraha and non-violence.**

**18. What does satyagraha mean? Choose one from the following options.**

(a) 'Satyagraha' means use of physical force to inflict pain while fighting.

- (b) 'Satyagraha' does not inflict pain, it is a non-violent method of fighting against oppression.
- (c) 'Satyagraha' means passive resistance and is a weapon of the weak.
- (d) 'Satyagraha' was a racist method of mass agitation.

**Ans - (b) 'Satyagraha' does not inflict pain, it is a non-violent method of fighting against oppression.**

**19. What was the purpose of imposing the Rowlatt Act?**

- (a) The Rowlatt Act forbade the Indians to qualify for administrative services.
- (b) The Rowlatt Act had denied Indians the right to political participation.
- (c) The Rowlatt Act imposed additional taxes on Indians who were already groaning under the burden of taxes.
- (d) The Rowlatt Act authorised the government to imprison any person without trial and conviction in a court of law.

**Ans - (d) The Rowlatt Act authorised the government to imprison any person without trial and conviction in a court of law.**

**20. Where did the brutal 'Jallianwala Massacre' take place?**

- (a) Amritsar
- (b) Meerut
- (c) Lahore
- (d) Lucknow

**Ans - (a) Amritsar**

**Very Short Answer Type Questions**

**(2)**

**21. Name any two methods used by Gandhiji to fight against the Britishers.**

**Ans.** (i) Satyagraha (ii) Non-Violence

**22. Name any four places where Satyagraha was launched by Gandhiji.**

**Ans.** (i) Champaran – Bihar (ii) Kheda – Gujarat  
(iii) Ahmedabad – Gujarat (iv) South Africa

**23. Name the Act which gave enormous powers to the government to repress political activities. Explain this act.**

**Ans.** Rowlatt Act.

It was the black act which gave the government and the police to repress political activities, and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.

**24. Why did Mahatma Gandhi call off Rowlatt Satyagraha?**

**Ans.** Gandhiji called off Rowlatt Satyagraha due to spread of violence.

**25. What were the major demands of the peasants who participated in the Non-cooperation Khilafat movement? Mention any two.**

**Ans.** (i) Reduction of revenue. (ii) Abolition of begar.

**26. What was Gandhi-Irwin Pact?**

**Ans.** The pact which was signed between Gandhiji and Lord Irwin on 5th March 1931. Under this pact Gandhiji consented to participate in a Round Table Conference in London whereas government agreed to release all the political prisoners.

**27. Which incident marked the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement?**

**Ans.** On 6th April, Mahatma Gandhi ceremonially violated the Salt Act, manufacturing salt by boiling sea water. This incident marked the beginning of the Civil Disobedience Movement.

**28. How did Non-cooperation movement unfold in cities and towns in India?**

**Ans.** (a) The movement started with middle-class participation in cities.  
(b) Thousands of students left government- controlled schools and colleges.  
(c) Foreign goods were boycotted, liquor shops picketed, and foreign cloth burnt in huge bonfires.

**29. What was Jallianwala bagh incident?**

**Ans.** On 10th April 1919, two nationalist leaders- Dr Saifuddin Kitchlew and Dr Satya Pal were arrested in Punjab under the infamous Rowlatt Act. On 13th April 1919, people gathered in a small park in Amritsar

which was called the Jallianwala Bagh, to protest against these arrests. The peaceful gathering was attended by men, women and children. General Dyer, a British military officer, stationed a regiment of soldiers at the only entrance of the park, declared the meeting illegal and without warning ordered his soldiers to fire. The firing lasted for ten minutes, till all the ammunition was exhausted. More than a thousand people were killed and over twice that number wounded. The massacre was worth calling genocide and it stunned the entire country. On 30th May 1919, Rabindranath Tagore renounced his knighthood. Gandhi returned the Kaiser-i-Hind award.

**30. What type of flag was designed during the swadeshi movement in Bengal explained its main feature?**

**Ans.** During the Swadeshi movement in Bengal, a tricolour flag was designed. Its main features were:

- The flag consisted of three colours—red, green and yellow.
- It also had eight lotuses which represented the eight British provinces in India.
- It had a crescent Moon which represented both Hindus and Muslims.

### Short Answer Type Questions

(3)

**31. The plantation workers in Assam had their own understanding of Mahatma Gandhi and the notion of Swaraj.’ Support the statement with arguments.**

**Ans.** The plantation workers in Assam had their own understanding of Mahatma Gandhi and the notion of Swaraj. This statement can be supported by the following arguments.

- For plantation workers in Assam, freedom meant right to move freely in and out of the confined space in which they were enclosed, and to retain a link with the native village.
- When they heard of the Non-Cooperation Movement thousands of workers left the plantations and headed home.
- They believed that Gandhi Raj meant that they would be given land in their own villages. However, due to steamer and railway strike, thousands were stranded on the way.

**32. Why did different social groups join the Civil Disobedience Movement. Explain.**

**Ans.** Different social groups joined the Civil Disobedience Movement. Three of them are listed below.

- Rich peasant communities like Patidars of Gujarat and Jats of Uttar Pradesh – joined the movement because, being producers of commercial crops, they were hard-hit by depression and falling prices. For them, Swaraj meant struggle against high revenues.
- Poor peasants joined the struggle because they found it difficult to pay the rent. They wanted the unpaid rent to be remitted.
- Rich business classes were against colonial policies which restricted trade. They joined the movement because they wanted protection against import of foreign goods. They thought that Swaraj would cancel colonial restrictions and trade would flourish without constraints.

**33. Simon Commission was greeted with slogan ‘Go Back Simon’ at arrival in India. Support this reaction of Indians with arguments.**

**Ans.** Simon Commission was greeted with slogan ‘Go Back Simon’ at arrival in India because of following reasons.

- Simon Commission was to look into the functioning of the constitutional system in India and suggest changes. The Commission did not have a single Indian member. They were all British. According to Indians, the commission did not hold any hopes for further constitutional reforms.
- Simon Commission arrived in India in 1928. It was greeted with the slogan ‘Go Back Simon’ and black flags.
- All parties including the Congress and Muslim League, participated in the demonstrations.

**34. “The Congress was reluctant to include the demands of industrial workers in its programme of struggle.” Analyse the reasons.**

**Ans.** The Congress was reluctant to include the demands of industrial workers in its programme of struggle because of following reasons.

- Congress wanted to include the demands of the masses as a whole and not a particular group or class.

- If the demand of the workers were included, then industrialists would get offended. The industrialists were supporting the Congress financially. The Congress did not want to alienate the industrialists and create anti-imperialist feelings.
- A big portion of the Congress membership and funding came from industrialists and small businessmen.

**35. Why did Mahatma Gandhi decide to withdraw the Non-Cooperation Movement in February 1922? Explain the reasons.**

**Ans.** Gandhi withdrew the Non-Cooperation Movement in February 1922 because of the following reasons.

- Gandhi felt the movement was turning violent at many places and the satyagrahis needed to be properly trained before they would be ready for the mass struggle.
- Within the Congress some leaders were by now tired of mass struggles and wanted to participate in the elections to the provincial councils set up after by the Government of India Act 1919.
- The final blow however came after the violent incident in Chauri Chaura in 1922 when a violent mob burnt a police station killing many policemen. Immediately after that, Gandhi called off the Non-Cooperation Movement.

**36. How did Salt March become an effective tool of resistance against colonialism? Explain.**

**Ans:** Salt became an effective tool of resistance against colonialism because of the following reasons:

- Gandhi found in salt a powerful bond that would unite the nations as it – was consumed by all rich and poor alike.
- Gandhi's letter to Viceroy Irwin stated eleven demands. Most of them were of general interest but the most stirring was to abolish the salt tax imposed by the colonial government.
- Irwin's unwillingness to negotiate forced Gandhi to start his salt March which was joined by thousands. It developed the feeling of nationalism.
- People in different parts of the country broke salt law and manufactured salt and demonstrated in front of government salt factories.

**37. Describe any three major problems faced by the peasants of Awadh in the days of Non-Cooperation Movement.**

**Ans:** Major problems faced by the peasants of Awadh were:

- The landlords and talukdars of Awadh demanded exorbitantly high land rent and a number of other cesses from the peasants.
- The peasants were compelled to do begar, that is, they had to work at landlord's farm without payment.
- As tenants, the peasants had no security of tenure and were often evicted from their land, they could not acquire any right over the leased land.

**38. Who were the first nationalists in India?**

**Ans:** The moderates of the Indian National Congress in 1885 were the first nationalists in India.

However, their approach was criticised by some people which led to the rise of radicals in congress who sought complete swaraj based on their own strength and self-reliance and constructive work.

**39. Why did political leaders differ sharply over the question of separate electorates?**

**Ans:** Political leaders differed sharply over the question of separate electorates because of differences in opinion. While those supporting the cause of minorities and the Dalits believed that only political empowerment would resolve their social backwardness, others like Gandhi thought that separate electorates would further slowdown the process of their integration into society. Also, it was feared that the system of separate electorates would gradually divide the country into numerous fragments because every community or class would then ask for separate representations.

**Long Answer Questions**

**(5)**

**40. Why did Gandhi decide to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act of 1919? How was it organized?**

**Answer:** Gandhiji decided to launch a nationwide Satyagraha against the proposed Rowlatt Act of 1919 because of the following reasons.

- In 1919, Rowlatt Act was hurriedly passed by the Imperial Legislative Council.
- Indian members unitedly opposed it.
- The Act gave the government enormous powers to repress political activities and allowed detention of political prisoners without trial for two years.
- The Act deprived the Indians of their civil rights.

It was organised in the following ways:

- Gandhiji wanted a non-violent civil disobedience against such unjust laws.
- It started with hartal on 6th April 1919.
- Rallies were organised in various cities in India.
- Workers in the railway work shop went on strike.
- Shops were closed down in protest.

**41. How did variety of cultural processes play an important role in making nationalism in India. Explain with examples.**

**Answer:** Variety of cultural processes played an important role in making of nationalism, in India in the following ways:

- The sense of collective belonging inculcated the spirit of nationalism among the people. History and fiction, folklore and songs and popular prints and symbols played an important part in the making of nationalism.
- Bharat Mata as identity of the nation: In the twentieth century, various images of Bharat Mata, came to light. It represented India. Bankim Chandra Chattopadhyay, who had written Vande Mataram as a hymn dedicated to the motherland, created the first image of Bharat Mata. Abanindranath Tagore portrayed Bharat Mata, as a calm, composed and spiritual figure. It was influenced by the Swadeshi movement.
- Folklore to restore a sense of pride: Rabindranath Tagore revived folk songs, folk tales, hymns, legends and stories. In Madras, Natesa Sastri published a collection of Tamil folktales the Folklore of southern India.
- Flags as identity of the Nation: During the Swadeshi Movement flags were carried to create a sense of national belonging. Carrying the flag and holding it aloft during marches became a symbol of defiance.
- Reinterpretation of History: Another means of creating a feeling of nationalism was through reinterpretation of history. Many Indians wrote about the glorious developments in ancient times, when art and architecture, mathematics and science flourished. They urged the readers to take pride in their glorious past.

**42. Why did Mahatma Gandhi decide to call off the Civil Disobedience Movement? Explain.**

**Answer:** Mahatma Gandhi decided to call off the Civil Disobedience Movement because of the following reasons.

- The British got worried by the developments of Civil Disobedience Movement and started the arrest of various top Congress leaders.
- This led to violent clashes in many parts of the country.
- When Abdul Ghaffar Khan was arrested from Peshawar, angry crowd demonstrated in the streets facing armoured cars and police firing many were killed.
- The arrest of Gandhiji led to the attacks on police force, municipal buildings and law courts by industrial workers in Sholapur.
- Colonial government got frightened and responded with the policy of brutal repression.
- At many places, Satyagrahis were attacked, women and children were beaten and about one lakh people were arrested. It was under these circumstances, Gandhiji called off the Civil Disobedience Movement

**43. Why did Mahatma Gandhi relaunch the Civil Disobedience Movement with great apprehension? Explain.**

**Answer:** Gandhiji relaunched the Civil Disobedience Movement with great apprehension because of the following reasons.

- The negotiations at the second Round Table conference in London ended in a failure.
- Back in India, the government had again begun the cycle of repression.
- Abdul Ghaffar Khan and Jawaharlal Nehru were in jail.
- Congress was declared an illegal organisation.
- A series of measures had been imposed to prevent meetings, demonstrations and boycotts. For over a year, the movement continued, but by 1934, it lost its momentum.

**44. How did Civil Disobedience Movement come into force in various parts of the country?**

**Explain with examples.**

**Answer:** The different social groups which participated in the Civil Disobedience Movement were:

- In the countryside, the rich peasant communities like Patidars of Gujarat and Jats of Uttar Pradesh took active part in the movement. They were hard hit by trade depression and falling prices and were unable to pay the governments revenue demand. For them Swaraj meant struggle against high revenue.
- As depression continued poor peasantry found it difficult to pay the rent. They joined a variety of radical movements often led by socialists and communists.
- Indian merchants and industrialists resented colonial policies which restricted trade. They were against imports of foreign goods. When the civil disobedience movement was first launched, they gave financial assistance and refused to buy or sell imported cloth. To organise business interests, they formed the Indian Industrial and Commercial Congress in 1920 and Federation of the Indian Chamber of Commerce and Industries (FICCI) in 1927.
- Some workers participated in the movement with their selective approach adopted from Gandhian ideas to protest against low wages and poor working conditions. There were strikes by railway workers and dockyard workers. Thousands of workers in Chotanagpur tin mines wore Gandhi caps and participated in protest rallies and boycott campaigns.
- Women joined the Civil Disobedience Movement in large number. They participated in protest marches, manufactured salt and picketed foreign cloth and liquor shops.

**45. How had Non-Cooperation Movement spread in cities? Explain.**

**Answer:** The Non-Cooperation Movement started in December 1920. People from various social groups participated in the movement.

- The movement started with the participation of middle-class in the cities. Thousands of students left the government-controlled schools and colleges, teachers resigned and lawyers gave up their practice. It was to be a non-violent movement.
- In Awadh, peasants' movement started against talukdars and landlords who demanded high rents and other cesses from peasants.
- In the Gudem Hills of Andhra Pradesh, a militant guerrilla movement started in the early 1920. It was started against the colonial government, which had closed large forest gates, preventing people from entering the forests to graze their cattle or to collect firewood and fruits.
- For plantation workers in Assam, freedom meant the right to move freely in and out of their confined place, which was not permitted under the Inland Emigration Act of 1859.
- In many places, nai-dobhi bandhs were organised to deprive landlords of the services of barbers and washerman.

**46. How did the 'First World War' create new economic and political situations in India?**

**Explain with examples.**

**Answer:** The First World War created a new economic and political situation and posed the following problems in India.

- to a huge increase in defence expenditure which was financed by increasing taxes It led on Indians.
- Custom duties were raised and income tax was introduced.
- Continuous price rise caused extreme hardship to the common people.

- Villagers were called upon to supply soldiers by forced recruitment in rural areas which caused widespread anger. All this was aggravated by failure of crop and famine.
- Between 1918 and 1921 crops failed, which further aggravated the anger.
- Shortage of essential commodities was the natural outcome of war as industries were geared to produce goods to fulfil war needs.

**47. How had Non-Cooperation Movement spread to the countryside? Explain.**

**Answer:** Non-Cooperation Movement began in December 1920. It spread to the countryside in the following ways.

- In Awadh, peasants were led by Baba Ramchandra. Here, the movement was against talukdars, who charged high rents and peasants had to do begar.
- The peasant movement demanded reduction of revenue and abolition of begar. By the end of 1920, Jawaharlal Nehru, Baba Ramchandra and others had formed Oudh Kisan Sabha. So after the beginning of the Non-Cooperation Movement, Congress wanted to integrate the Awadh peasants struggle into a wider struggle.
- Tribal peasants interpreted the message of Gandhiji and idea of swaraj in their own way. In Gudum Hills in Andhra Pradesh, a militant guerrilla movement was organised against colonial oppression under the leadership of Alluri Sitaram Raju. He was inspired by the Non-Cooperation Movement.
- The Gudum rebels attacked police stations, attempted to kill British officials and carried on guerrilla warfare for achieving swaraj.
- The movement also spread among the plantation workers in Assam. They were not permitted to leave the tea gardens without permission.

**48. How did the Non-Cooperation Movement spread in cities across the country? Explain its effects on the economic front.**

**Answer:** The Non-Cooperation Movement spread in cities across the country in following ways:

- The Non-Cooperation Movement started with middle-class participation in the cities. Thousands of students left government-controlled schools and colleges, the teachers resigned and the lawyers gave up their lucrative practices.
  - The council elections were boycotted in most provinces. Shops selling foreign goods were picketed and foreign goods boycotted.
- The effects of non-cooperation on the economic front were extensive.
- Boycotting of foreign goods, liquor and clothes hit the colonial economy.
  - Value of foreign goods dropped. The import of foreign cloth dropped significantly between 1921 and 1922.
  - At many places merchants and traders refused to trade in foreign goods or finance foreign trade.
  - As the movement spread, people began to discard imported clothes and started to wear khadi and other homemade clothes. This promoted Indian textile mills and the production of handloom went up

**49. Describe the significance of the Civil Disobedience Movement in the freedom Struggle of India.**

**Answer:** The Civil Disobedience Movement was unique and significant in many ways.

- Unlike the Non-Cooperation Movement, the satyagrahis in the movement broke various colonial laws.
- This was a more successful and widespread mass movement. Thousands of people in different parts of the country broke salt law, manufactured salt and demonstrated in front of government offices and factories.
- The peasants refused to pay revenue and chaukidari taxes. Officials in villages resigned and forest people violated forest laws.
- In this movement, the satyagrahis displayed immense courage and sincerity. Despite the oppression of colonial government, they did not resort to violence and bravely courted arrests. All Congress leaders were arrested but this could not break the morale of the people.



- Another significant feature of the movement was the increased participation of women. Thousands of women came out of their comfortable life at home to participate in the mass movement. They demonstrated courage and determination, broke salt laws and manufactured salt, picketed shops selling foreign goods and organised various other activities. In the Civil Disobedience Movement, the business and industrial class also supported the national leaders by financial assistance and participated in Khadi movement.

### Source Based Questions

(1+1+2=4)

#### 50 . Read the extract and answer the Questions that follows:

Mahatma Gandhi's thoughts on Satyagraha 'It is said of "passive resistance" that it is the weapon of the weak, but the power which is the subject of this article can be used only by the strong. This power is not passive resistance; indeed, it calls for intense activity. The movement in South Africa was not passive but active ...' 'Satyagraha is not physical force. A satyagrahi does not inflict pain on the adversary; he does not seek his destruction ... In the use of satyagraha, there is no ill-will whatever.' 'Satyagraha is pure soul-force. Truth is the very substance of the soul. That is why this force is called satyagraha. The soul is informed with knowledge. In it burns the flame of love... Non-violence is the supreme dharma ...'.

'It is certain that India cannot rival Britain or Europe in force of arms. The British worship the war-God and they can all of them become, as they are becoming, bearers of arms. The hundreds of millions in India can never carry arms. They have made the religion of non-violence their own ...'

#### (i) Why is satyagraha considered as pure soul-force?

**Ans:** Satyagraha is considered as a pure soul-force because the idea of satyagraha emphasised the power of truth and the need to search for truth. Truth is the very substance of the soul. That is why this force is called satyagraha. The soul is informed with knowledge.

#### (ii) How has Gandhiji described passive resistance?

**Ans:** Satyagraha is said of "passive resistance", that is it is the weapon of the weak, but the power which is the subject of this article can be used only by the strong. This power is not passive resistance; indeed, it calls for intense activity. Without seeking vengeance or being aggressive, a satyagrahi could win the battle through non-violence. This could be done by appealing to the conscience of the oppressor.

#### (iii) What did the idea of satyagraha mean?

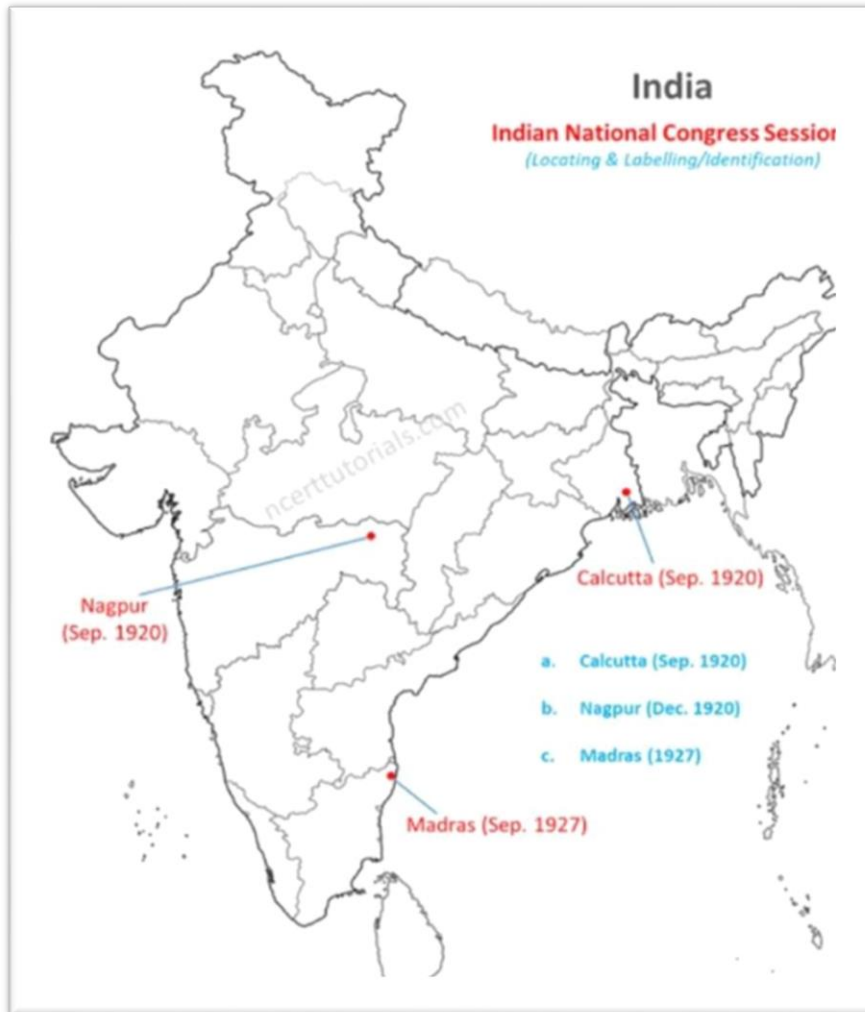
**Ans:** Gandhiji successfully fought against the racist regime with a novel method of mass agitation, which he called satyagraha.

### Map based Questions:

2 Marks

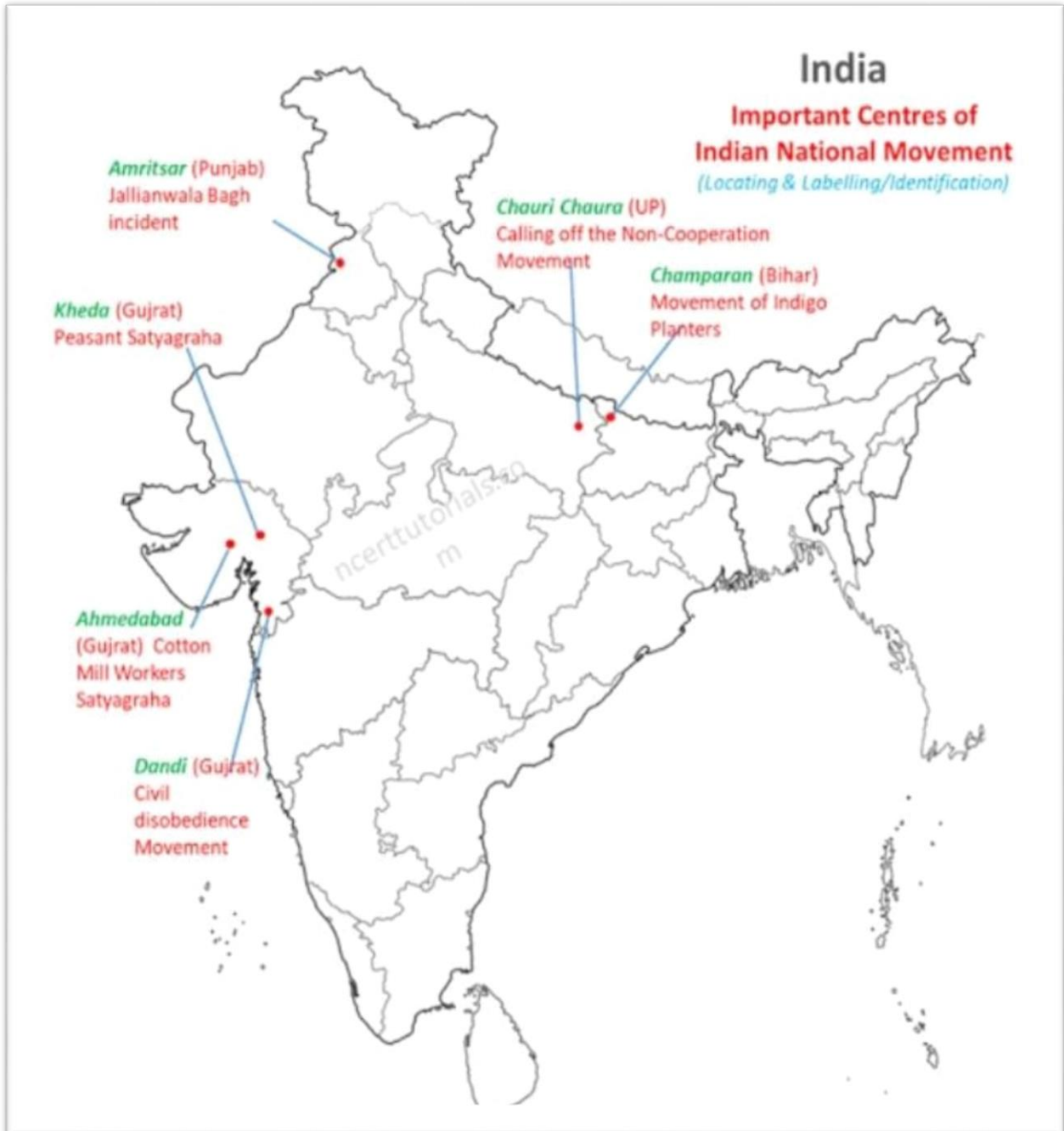
1. Indian national Congress Sessions:

- Calcutta (Sep. 1920)
- Nagpur (Dec. 1920)
- Madras (1927)



## 2. Important centres of Indian National Movement: -

- Champaran (Bihar)-Movement of indigo planters
- Kheda (Gujrat)-Peasant satyagraha
- Ahmedabad (Gujrat)-Cotton mill workers satyagraha
- Amritsar (Panjab)-Jallianwala Bagh Incident
- Chauri Chaura (U.P.)-Calling off Non-Cooperation Movement
- Dandi (Gujrat)-Civil Disobedience Movement



## Chapter 3- The Making of a global world

---

### The Pre-modern World

- Globalisation refers to an economic system that has emerged in the last 15 years.
- From ancient times travellers, traders, priest and pilgrims travelled vast distances for knowledge, opportunity, spiritual fulfilment or to escape persecution. They Carried goods, money, values, skills, ideas, inventions and even germs and diseases.

### Silk Routes Link the World

- The Silk roots are a good example of pre-modern trade and cultural links between distant part of the world. The name ‘Silk roots’ points to the importance of West-bound Chinese silk cargoes along this route.
- Trade and cultural exchange always went hand in hand.

### Food Travels: Spaghetti and Potato

- Traders and travellers introduced new crops to the lands they travelled.
- It is believed that noodles travelled west from China to become spaghetti. Arab traders took pasta to fifth-century Sicily, an island now in Italy. Similar foods were also known in India and Japan, so the truth about their origins may never be known.
- European’s poor began to eat better and live longer with the introduction of the humble potato.
- Ireland’s poorest peasants became so dependent on potatoes that when disease destroyed the potato crop in the mid- 1840s, hundreds of thousands died of starvation.

### Conquest, Disease and Trade

- European sailors found a sea route to Asia and also successfully crossed the Western Ocean to America.
- Precious metals, particularly silver, from mines located in present day Peru and Mexico also enhanced Europe’s wealth and financed its trade with Asia.
- The Portuguese and Spanish conquest and colonisation of America was decisively under way by the mid sixteenth century.
- The most powerful weapon of the Spanish conquerors were the germs such as those of smallpox that they carried on their person.
- America's original inhabitants has no immunity against these diseases that came from Europe. Smallpox in particular proved a deadly killer.
- Until the 19th Century, poverty and hunger were common in Europe. Cities were crowded and deadly diseases were widespread.
- Until well into the 18th century, China and India were among the world’s richest countries. They were also pre-eminent in Asian Trade.
- However, from the 15th century, China is said to have restricted Overseas contacts and retreated into isolation.

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

1. The famous fabled city of gold ‘EL Dorado’ is located city in which continent?

- i) Africa                      ii) North America                      iii) South America                      iv) Asia

**Answer-** iii) South America

**2. Who were the original inhabitants of America?**

- i) American-Indians    ii) Blue Indians    iii) American    iv) Africans

**Ans-** i) Americans -Indians

**3. Which powerful Bio-weapon was used by Spanish to conquer America?**

- i) Black fever    ii) Malaria    iii) Small pox    iv) Rinderpest

**Answer-** iii) Small pox

**4. Which mode of currency traced back from the Maldives found their way to China and East Africa?**

- i) Gold Coin    ii) Cowries    iii) Punch mark coin    iv) None of the above

**Answer-ii) Cowries**

**5. \_\_\_\_\_ travelled west from China to be called ‘Spaghetti’.**

- i) Noodles    ii) Tea    iii) pottery    iv) Opium

**Answer-** i) Noodles

**6. Who discovered the vast continent, later known as America?**

- i) Vasco da Gama    ii) Christopher Columbus  
iii) V. S. Naipal    iv) None of these

**Answer-** ii) Christopher Columbus

#### **VERY SHORT QUESTIONS**

**(2 Marks)**

**7. Why did Europe’s wealth and Finance enhanced its trade with Asia?**

**Ans-** Precious metals, particularly silver from mines located in present day Peru, Mexico also enhanced Europe’s wealth and finance its trade with Asia.

**8. How did new crops could make the difference between life and death ?**

**Ans-** Sometimes new crops could make the difference between life and death. Europe’s poor began to eat better and live longer with the introduction of the humble potato. Ireland peasants became so dependent on potatoes that when disease destroyed the potato crop in the mid-1840s, hundreds of thousands died of starvation.

#### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

**(3 Marks)**

**9. The Portugese and Spanish conquest and colonisation of America was decisively under way by the mid sixteenth century. Explain the statement.**

**Ans-** European conquest was not just a result of superior firepower. In fact, the most powerful weapon of the Spanish conquerors was not a conventional military weapon at all. It was the germs as those of smallpox that they carried on their person. America’s original inhabitants had no immunity against these diseases that came from Europe. It killed and decimated whole communities, paving the way for conquest.

#### **LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS**

**(5 marks)**

**10. Trade and culture exchange always went hand in hand. Explain the statement in the light of silk route.**

**Answer-** i) The silk routes, during pre-modern period, had vibrant trade and cultural links with distant lands.

ii) Historians point to number of silk routes over lands and sea connecting vast regions of Asia with Europe and North Africa.

iii) The name silk route points to the silk cargoes going from China to the west, along this route.

iv) Chinese pottery also travelled through this route.

v) Early Christian missionaries came to Asia through this route. Later Muslim preachers took the same route. Much before all this, Buddhism emerged from eastern India and spread in several direction through intersecting points on the silk route.

### **SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS**

**(1+1+2=4)**

#### **11. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

The pre-modern world shrank greatly in the sixteenth century after European sailors found a sea route to Asia and also successfully crossed the western ocean to America. For centuries before, the Indian Ocean had known a bustling trade, with goods, people, knowledge, customs, etc. criss-crossing its waters. The Indian subcontinent was central to these flows and a crucial point in their networks. The entry of the Europeans helped expand or redirect some of these flows towards Europe.

Before its 'discovery', America had been cut off from regular contact with the rest of the world for millions of years. But from the sixteenth century, its vast lands and abundant crops and minerals began to transform trade and lives everywhere.

Precious metals, particularly silver, from mines located in present-day Peru and Mexico also enhanced Europe's wealth and financed its trade with Asia. Legends spread in seventeenth-century Europe about South America's fabled wealth. Many expeditions set off in search of El Dorado, the fabled city of gold.

##### **(i) Silver was mined in which countries?**

**Answer-** Peru and Mexico

##### **(ii) Name the fabled city of gold?**

**Answer-** El-Dorado

##### **(iii) How did Indian subcontinent become centre of world trade during 16<sup>th</sup> century?**

**Answer-** For centuries before, the Indian Ocean had known a bustling trade, with goods, people, knowledge, customs, etc. criss-crossing its waters. The Indian subcontinent was central to these flows and a crucial point in their networks.

#### **12. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

Food offers many examples of long-distance cultural exchange. Traders and travellers introduced new crops to the lands they travelled. Even 'ready' foodstuff in distant parts of the world might share common origins. Take spaghetti and noodles. It is believed that noodles travelled west from China to become spaghetti. Or, perhaps Arab traders took pasta to fifth-century Sicily, an island now in Italy. Similar foods were also known in India and Japan, so the truth about their origins may never be known. Yet such guesswork suggests the possibilities of long-distance cultural contact even in the pre-modern world.

Many of our common foods such as potatoes, soya, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chillies, sweet potatoes, and so on were not known to our ancestors until about five centuries ago. These foods were only introduced in Europe and Asia after Christopher Columbus accidentally discovered the vast continent that would later become known as the Americas.

##### **1. Who discovered America?**

**Answer-** Christopher Columbus

##### **2. When did pasta reach to Italy?**

**Answer-** In fifth century

##### **3. Name the common food which used at present days show example of long distance culture exchange.**

**Answer-** Many of our common foods such as potatoes, soya, groundnuts, maize, tomatoes, chillies, sweet potatoes etc.

---

---

## Chapter 4- Print culture and modern world

### **The First Printed Books**

The First Printed Books Hand printing was the initial form of printing; practised in China, Japan and Korea.

Inked wooden blocks, having alphabets carved out by artisans, were rubbed against the paper. The papers then made were porous, so two articles were not published. The not printed sides were sown, and such 'accordion books' in China were made.

In the sixteenth century, China was one a country producing printed matter on a large scale. Initially, it included only textbooks for examinations of civil services.

Gradually, other printed matter became available to the people. People were more interested in reading fictional stories, poetries, plays, autobiographies and the like. Likewise, trade information became available in printed form, which was vastly used by traders.

### **Gutenberg and the Printing Press**

Gutenberg is an expert in the art of polishing stones and with his existing knowledge, he adapted the existing technologies for designing his own innovations. The first printed book with the new system was the Bible. With the coming of new technologies, the existing technology of hand-made was not displaced completely. Books that were printed for the rich were left blank with space for decoration on the printed pages. Between 1450-1550, printing presses came to be set in most parts of Europe, and shift from the hand printing to mechanical printing led to the print revolution.

### **The Print Revolution and Its Impact**

The Print Revolution was more than simply a new technique of creating books; it changed people's relationships with information and knowledge, as well as with institutions and authority. Let's have a look at some of these modifications.

### **A New Reading Public**

With the invention of the printing press, a new reading audience arose. Previously, information was passed down verbally. Books may now reach a larger range of individuals. However, the shift was not easy because books could only be read by the educated. Printers began producing popular ballads and folk stories with illustrations for individuals who could not read. As a result, oral culture reached print, and printed literature was orally conveyed. And the hearing and reading publics grew entwined.

### **Religious Debates and the Fear of Print**

Print enabled the widespread dissemination of ideas, ushering in a new era of debate and discussion. Printed books are not universally embraced. There was apprehension about the propagation of rebellious and irreligious ideas. Martin Luther, a Christian reformer, authored Ninety-Five Theses in 1517, opposing many of the Roman Catholic Church's practices and ceremonies. The church was challenged to discuss his beliefs. This resulted in conflict within the Church and the start of the **Protestant Reformation**.

### **Print and Dissent**

Menocchio began reading literature accessible in his neighbourhood in the sixteenth century. He redefined the Bible's meaning and developed a picture of God and Creation that infuriated the Roman Catholic Church. Menocchio was brought up twice and eventually killed when the church launched its **inquisition** to suppress **heretical** views. The Roman Church began keeping an Index of Prohibited Books in 1558.

### **The Reading Mania**

In the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries, when literacy and schools grew throughout Europe, there was a virtual reading craze. Penny **chapbooks** were carried by Chapman and were sold for a penny, allowing even the impoverished to purchase them. The same was the 'Bibliothèque Bleue' in France. Periodical press emerged in the early 18th century, combining current-events information with fun. The findings of Isaac Newton were published, which affected scientifically likely readers.

### **The Nineteenth Century**

Massive advances in mass reading in Europe throughout the nineteenth century resulted in a large influx of new readers among children, women, and workers.

### **Print comes to India**

Together with Portuguese missionaries, the first printing press arrived in Goa. In the middle of the 16th century, the first Tamil book was produced in Cochin in 1579 by Catholic monks, as the first Malayalam book was published there in 1713. Even though the English East India Company started importing presses in the late seventeenth century, the English press didn't really take off in India until much later. James Augustus Hickey was the editor of the Bengal Gazette, a weekly publication.

## **Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)**

### **1. The printing press was first introduced in India by which one of the following?**

- (a) East India Company officials
- (b) Indian reformers
- (c) Portuguese missionaries
- (d) Arabic traders

**ANS – (C) Portuguese missionaries**

### **2. Which one among the following is an ancient name of Tokyo?**

- (a) Osaka
- (b) Nagano
- (c) Edo
- (d) Gifu

**ANS – (C) Edo**

### **3. What is Calligraphy?**

- (a) Poetry
- (b) Textbooks
- (c) Flowers Arrangement-
- (d) Stylized form of writing

**ANS – (d) Stylized form of writing.**

### **4. Who started to edit the Bengal Gazette weekly in 1780.**

- (a) James Augustus Hickey
- (b) Richard M Hoe
- (c) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
- (d) None of the above

**ANS – (a) James Augustus Hickey**

### **5. The earliest kind of print technology was developed in:**

- (a) Japan and Korea
- (b) India, Japan and Korea
- (c) China, Japan and Korea
- (d) India, China and Arabia

**ANS – (c) China, Japan and Korea**

### **6. The first to use wood-block printing in Europe were:**

- (a) The French
- (b) The Spaniards
- (c) The Italians
- (d) The Germans

**ANS - (c) The Italians**

### **7. Protestant Reformation was:**

- (a) A 16th century movement to reform the Catholic Church dominated by Rome
- (b) A challenge to the authority of Rome
- (c) A new religion started by Martin Luther
- (d) The French Revolution

**ANS - (a) A 16th century movement to reform the Catholic Church dominated by Rome**

### **8. The term 'Galley' refers to**

- (a) A corridor or long passage where family portraits are hung
- (b) A metal frame in which types are laid and the text composed



- (c) A long, low built ship with one deck, propelled by oars and sails
- (d) A scarecrow

**ANS - (b) A metal frame in which types are laid and the text composed**

**9. Print culture, according to many historians, made people critical and rational because:**

- (a) Enlightened thinkers argued for the rule of reason rather than custom, judging everything with reasons
- (b) The thinkers attacked sacred authority of the Church and despotism of the State
- (c) People who read the ideas of Voltaire and Rousseau saw the world through different eyes
- (d) All of these

**ANS - (d) All of these**

**10. The contribution of Grimm Brothers of Germany to children's literature was :**

- (a) Publishing stories for them
- (b) Spending years on compiling traditional folktales gathered from peasants, editing and publishing them as a collection in 1812
- (c) Having a new shape to rural folktales
- (d) All the above

**ANS - (b) Spending years on compiling traditional folktales gathered from peasants, editing and publishing them as a collection in 1812.**

**11. Who wrote about the injustices of the caste system in 'Gulamgiri'?**

- (a) Raja Rammohan Roy
- (b) Jyotiba Phule
- (c) Bal Gangadhar Tilak
- (d) Bankim Chandra

**ANS - (b) Jyotiba Phule**

**12. The book, 'Chote Aur Bade Ka Sawal' talked about**

- (a) The link between caste and class exploitation
- (b) The injustices of the caste system
- (c) Restrictions on the vernacular press
- (d) Ill treatment of widows

**ANS - (a) The link between caste and class exploitation.**

**13. Which of the following is the correct meaning of 'Bibliotheque Bleue'?**

- (a) An author
- (b) Low price small books
- (c) Monuments
- (d) None of these

**ANS - (b) Low price small books**

**14. Choose the name of the oldest printed book of Japan.**

- (a) Diamond Sutra
- (b) Bible
- (c) Ukiyo
- (d) Koran

**ANS - (a) Diamond Sutra**

**15. Which one among the following is an autobiography of Rashesundari Devi?**

- (a) Amar Jiban
- (b) Amar Jyoti
- (c) Amar Jawan
- (d) Amar Zindagi

**ANS - (a) Amar Jiban**

**16. Which of the following refers to print revolution?**

- (a) Invention of printing press
- (b) Shift from hand printing to mechanical printing
- (c) Revolt of people against printed matters
- (d) Handwritten manuscripts for printed books

**ANS - (b) Shift from hand printing to mechanical printing**

**17. Following the newspaper was published by raja Rammohan Roy?**

- a) Bengal Gazette.
- b) Sambad Kaumudi.
- c) Samachar Chandrika.
- d) Amritbazar.

**ANS - b) Sambad Kaumudi**

**18. Assertion – The new reading culture was accompanied by a new technology.**

**Reason- From hand printing there was a shift to mechanical printing.**

**ANS - Both are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion**

**19. Which of the following reading material were especially for women?**

- a) Chapbooks.
- b) Grimm's fairytales.
- c) Penny magazines.
- d) The Bible.

## ANS – c) Penny magazines

### Very Short Answer questions (VSAQs)

(2)

**20. Mention the technique adopted to educate white-collar workers in Europe during the 19th century.**

ANS - The technique of lending libraries was adopted to educate the white-collar workers in Europe during the 19th century.

**21. Mention any one technique of preserving the manuscript in India.**

ANS- The manuscripts in India were preserved by pressing them between wooden covers or being seen together.

**22. Which was the first book written by Gutenberg?**

ANS - The bible was the first book written by Gutenberg.

**23. How were Bibliotheque Bleue different from penny chapbooks?**

ANS - Penny chapbooks were carried by petty pedlars known as chapmen in England. These books were sold for a penny, so that even the poor could buy them. “Bibliotheque Bleue’, were low-priced small books printed in France. Both were low priced books printed on poor quality paper but the Biliotheque Bleue were bound in cheap blue covers.

**24. What did the Grimm Brothers publish?**

ANS - The Grimm Brothers of Germany compiled traditional folktales gathered from peasants and published them in 1812.

**25. Which method of hand-printing was developed in China?**

ANS - From AD 594, books in China were printed by rubbing paper against the inked surface of woodblocks.

**26. What was Protestant Reformation?**

ANS - Protestant Reformation was a 16th Century movement to reform Catholic Church dominated by Rome. Martin Luther was one of the main Protestant reformers. He wrote Ninety-Five Theses criticizing many practices and rituals of the Roman Catholic Church. Several traditions of anti-Catholic Christianity developed out of the movement.

**27. What kind of books were available in India before the introduction of print culture?**

ANS - Earlier, the books used to be handwritten either on palm leaves or handmade paper. India has a tradition of handwritten manuscripts in Sanskrit, Arabic, Persian as well as in various vernacular languages. Pages were sometimes beautifully illustrated. They would either be pressed between wooden covers or sewn together to ensure preservation.

**28. Why is Charles Metcafe called the ‘Liberator of the Press’ in India?**

ANS - Charles Metcalfe was the Acting-Governor General of India in 1835. He distinguished himself by liberating the Press in India and was responsible for removing all the restrictions on the Press in India.

**29. What kind of information did the periodical press and newspapers carry in the 18<sup>th</sup> century?**

ANS - The periodical press and newspapers carried combined information about current affairs with entertainment. They also carried information about wars and trade as well as news of developments in other places.

### Short Answer questions (SAQs)

(3)

**30. What repressive measures were adopted by them to control the freedom of press after the revolt of 1857?**

ANS - The English Government wanted to suppress the native press because the vernacular newspapers had become assertively nationalist. They feared that if their freedom of Press is not curtailed, it might encourage the masses to rise again against the colonial rule.

In 1878, the Vernacular Press Act was passed which provided the Government with extensive rights to censor reports and editorials in the vernacular press.

Then onwards, the government kept regular track of the vernacular newspapers published in different provinces. When a report was judged as seditious, the newspaper was warned, and if the warning was ignored, the Press could be seized and the printing machinery confiscated.

**31. Explain any three features of handwritten manuscripts before the age of print in India.**

ANS - Three features of handwritten manuscripts

- (i) Before the age of print everything had to be written by hand.
- (ii) Handwritten manuscripts were expensive but fragile and it was a laborious and time-consuming business.
- (iii) Pages were beautifully illustrated.
- (iv) As initially paper was not available, bark of trees, palm leaves, vellum etc. were used to write manuscripts.

**32. Print not only stimulated the publication of conflicting opinions amongst communities but it also connected communities and people in different parts of India. Examine the statement.**

ANS –(i) Religious texts reached a wide circle of people encouraging discussions debates and controversies within and among different religions.

(ii) Newspapers conveyed news from one place to other creating pan - Indian identities.

(iii) Spread of ideas through printed texts and newspapers led to the widespread participation of Indians.

(iv) Print propagated against social evils like Sati, child marriage and the purdah system.

(v) Emergence of many social reforms and reform movements.

(vi) New ideas emerged through the clashes of opinion opinions.

**33. Write short notes to show what you know about: The Vernacular Press Act.**

ANS – (i) The Vernacular Press Act was passed in 1878 by the British government in India.

(ii) This act provided the government with extensive rights to censor reports and editorials in the Vernacular Press.

(iii) If a Vernacular Paper published any seditious material, the paper was banned, and its printing machinery was seized and destroyed.

**34.. Highlight any three innovations which have improved the printing technology from nineteenth century onwards.**

ANS - Three innovations which have improved the printing technology from nineteenth century onwards:

- Methods of feeding paper improved.
- The quality of printing plates became better.
- Automatic paper reels and photoelectric controls of the colour register were introduced.
- The accumulation of several individual mechanical improvements transformed the appearance of printed texts.

**35. Explain any five reasons for bringing in large number of new readers among children, women and workers during the late 19<sup>th</sup> century.**

ANS - The reasons are

- Compulsory primary education;
- Women became important as readers;
- Lending libraries became instrumental for educating white collar workers, artisans and lower middle-class people.
- Self-educated working novelist were women who defined a new type of strong woman; and
- best known novelist was who defined a new type of strong woman.

**36. How did the printers manage to attract the people, largely illiterate, towards printed books?**

**ANS** - The rate of literacy was very low in European countries till the twentieth century:

To attract the illiterate common people towards printed books, publishers realised the wider reach of printed work whereby even those who could not read could certainly enjoy listening to books being read out. So, printers began publishing popular ballads and folk tales. Such books would be profusely illustrated with pictures.

These were also sung and recited at gatherings in villages and in taverns in towns.

**37. What were the new inventions that increased the circulation of printed materials?**

**ANS** - With the growing demand for books, woodblock printing gradually became more and more popular and was widely used in Europe to print textiles, playing cards, and religious pictures with simple, brief texts. The breakthrough in printing technology occurred when Johann Gutenberg developed the first printing press.

The Olive Press provided the model for the printing press, and moulds were used for casting the metal types for the letters and alphabet. The first book Gutenberg printed was Bible. As the number of printing press grew, book production boomed. The shift from hand printing to mechanical printing led to the print revolution.

**38. Give any three reasons favouring shift from hand printing to mechanical printing in China?**

**ANS** - By the 17th century, urban culture bloomed in China and the use of print diversified. It was important for a shift from hand printing to mechanical printing in China to take place. Print was no longer used just by scholar-officials. Merchants used print in their everyday life to collect trade information.

Reading increasingly became a leisure activity. Rich women began to read and many women began publishing their poetry and plays.

In the late 19th century as, Western powers established their outposts in China, western printing techniques and mechanical presses were imported. Shanghai became the hub of the new print culture catering to Western-style schools.

**39. Highlight any three circumstances that led to the intermingling of the hearing culture and the reading culture.**

**ANS** - With the printing press, a new reading public emerged. Printing reduced the cost of books.

Access to books created a new culture of reading. Earlier reading was restricted to the elite.

Common people lived in a world of oral culture. They heard sacred texts read out, ballads recited and folk tales narrated. Knowledge was transferred orally.

Printers began publishing popular ballads and folk tales, illustrated with pictures. These were sung and recited at gatherings. Oral culture thus entered print and printed material was orally transmitted.

The line that separated oral and reading cultures diminished and the hearing and reading public intermingled.

**Long Answer Questions:**

**(5)**

**40. Evaluate the impact of print technology on the poor people in India.**

**ANS** - There were many effects of the spread of print culture for poor people in nineteenth-century India.

(i) Small books which were very cheap were sold at crossroads, once they were brought to the markets of Madras town in the nineteenth century.

(ii) The access to books was expanded when public libraries were set up in the early twentieth century.

(iii) In many printed essays and tracts, the issues of caste discrimination were written and highlighted from the late nineteenth century.

(iv) by 1930's libraries were set up by Bangalore mill workers with the objective of educating themselves.

(v) These libraries were promoted by social reformers who wanted to propagate the message of nationalism, bring literacy, and restrict excessive drinking among the workers.

**41. "Printing press played a major role in shaping the Indian society of the 19th Century." Analyse the statement.**

**ANS** - The printing press played the following role in shaping the Indian society of the 19th century.

(i) Print media opened an era of debates and discussions on various socio-religious issues. It spread many new ideas. All the ideas were accepted only after logical thinking rather than accepting blindly.

(ii) Socio-religious reformers are able to spread their ideas against several evil religious customs such as sati, female infanticide etc. Example: Gulamgiri of Jyotiba Phule.

(iii) In north India the Muslim saints, the Ulemas, used cheap lithographic presses to print the religious newspapers. They wrote against British policy of religious conversion and changing of the Muslim personal laws.

(iv) Among Hindus, it encouraged the reading of religious texts.

(v) It connected communities and people in different parts of India.

(vi) By converging news from one place to another, newspapers created pan-Indian identities.

**42. Explain briefly the initial efforts made by foreigners to introduce printing press in India.**

**ANS** - (i) The Portuguese missionaries first introduced printing press in India in the mid-16th century.

(ii) Jesuit priests learnt Konkani and printed several tracts.

(iii) By 1674 about 50 books had been printed in the Konkani and Kannada language.

(iv) Catholic priest first published printed books in Tamil in Cochin and in 1713 first Malayalam book was printed.

(v) From 1780, James Augustus Hickey began to edit the Bengal Gazette, a weekly magazine; it was a private English enterprise and was free from colonial influence.

(vi) Hickey published a lot of advertisements including those that related to import and sale of (vii)

By the close of the 18th century, a number of newspaper and journals appeared in print.

**43. Explain how the print culture assisted the growth of nationalism in India.**

**Or**

**Role of novels was different for colonisers and nationalists. Explain.**

**ANS** – (i) By the end of 19th century, a large number of newspapers in Indian vernacular languages were published.

(ii) These newspapers published articles written by national leaders. Their ideas were communicated to people through these newspapers.

(iii) The people of different communities and places were thus connected by print media. Newspapers conveyed news from one place to another creating pan-Indian identity.

(iv) The nationalist newspapers exposed the colonial misrule and encouraged nationalist activities. As these were written in spoken languages of various regions common man could easily understand the content.

(v) When Punjab revolutionaries were deported in 1907, Balagangadhar Tilak wrote articles sympathising with them. He was arrested which provoked protest among masses.

Thus, it is clear, print culture assisted the growth of nationalism in India.

**44. Why did some people in the eighteenth-century Europe think that print culture would bring enlightenment and end despotism?**

**ANS** - By mid-eighteenth century, people started believing that books were a means of spreading progress and enlightenment. They believed books could change the world and liberate society from despotism and tyranny. Thinkers hoped that widespread use of books would help people to reason

out and give them strength to fight despotism. The knowledge imparted in the books would help the masses to Question the rights of the rulers (or divine right theory). Louise Sebastien Mercier, a novelist staunchly believed that the power of print would spread enlightenment and destroy the very basis of despotism.

**45. What do you understand by ‘visual culture’ and its role in printing in India?**

**ANS** - By the end of 19th century, a new visual culture had started.

Increasing number of printing presses helped in the production of visual images and reproduced them in multiple copies.

Painters like Raja Ravi Varma helped in producing images for mass circulation.

Cheap prints and calendars were easily available in markets and could be bought even by the poor to decorate the walls of their homes or workplaces. These prints helped in developing popular ideas about modernity and tradition, religion and politics and society and culture.

**46. What is a manuscript? List any four shortcomings of manuscripts.**

**ANS** - India had a very rich and old tradition of handwritten manuscripts—in Sanskrit, Arabic, Persian and other vernacular languages.

Manuscripts were copied on palm leaves or on handmade paper. Pages were sometimes beautifully illustrated.

Shortcomings of manuscript:

Manuscripts were highly expensive and fragile and could not be carried around easily.

They could not be read easily as the script was written in different styles.

Production of handwritten manuscripts could not satisfy the ever-increasing demand for books.

Copying was an expensive, laborious and time-consuming business.

Even though pre-colonial Bengal had developed an extensive network of village, primary schools, students very often did not read texts. They only learnt to write.

**47. ‘The shift from hand printing to mechanical printing led to the print revolution in Europe/ Explain the statement with examples.**

**ANS** - Between 1450 and 1550, printing presses were set up in most countries of Europe. Printers from Germany travelled to other countries seeking work helping start new presses. As the number of printing presses grew, book production boomed.

The second half of the 15th century saw 20 million copies of printed books flooding the markets in Europe. The number increased to 200 million copies in 16th century. This shift from hand printing to mechanical printing led to the print revolution.

Printing became a revolutionary process and became the vehicle for reaching masses of readers quickly.

The printed books at first closely resembled the written manuscripts in appearance and layout.

The metal letters initiated the ornamental handwritten styles.

Borders were illuminated by hand with foliage and other patterns, and illustrations were painted.

In the books printed for the rich, space for decoration was kept blank on the printed page for the purchaser to choose the design and the painting school that would do the illustration.

**48. Explain the significance of newspapers and journals developed from the early 18th century.**

**ANS** - By the close of the eighteenth century, a number of newspapers and journals appeared in print. Not just the English people, the Indians too began to publish Indian newspapers. The first newspaper to come out was the weekly Bengal Gazette, brought out by Gangadhar Bhattacharya.

Printed tracts and newspapers not only spread new ideas, but they also shaped the nature of debate.

A wider public could now participate in public discussions and express their views.

There were intense controversies between the social and religious reformers and Hindu orthodoxy over matters like widow immolation, monotheism, Brahmanical priesthood and idolatry. So that

these ideas and thoughts could reach a wider audience, newspapers were printed in the spoken language of ordinary people.

Newspapers and journals not only helped the publication of conflicting opinions but also connected people and communities in different parts of India. Newspapers conveyed news from one place to another, creating Pan-Indian identities.

**49. “The new technology could not entirely displace the existing art of producing books by hand during 15th century.” Support the statement.**

**ANS** – (i) The printed books at first closely resembled the written manuscripts in appearance and layout.

(ii) The metal letters imitated the ornamental handwritten styles.

(iii) Borders were illuminated by hand with foliage and other patterns and illustrations were painted.

(iv) In the books printed for the rich, space for decoration was kept blank on the printed page. Each purchaser could choose the designs and decide on the painting school that would do the illustrations.

(v) The new technology did not entirely displace the existing art of producing books by hand.

**Case based Questions –**

**(1+1+2=4)**

**50. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

New forms of popular literature appeared in print, targeting new audiences. Booksellers employed pedlars who roamed around villages, carrying little books for sale. There were almanacs or ritual calendars, along with ballads and folktales. But other forms of reading matter, largely for entertainment, began to reach ordinary readers as well. In England, penny chapbooks were carried by petty pedlars known as chapmen, and sold for a penny, so that even the poor could buy them. In France, were the ‘Biliotheque Bleue’, which were low-priced small books printed on poor quality paper, and bound in cheap blue covers. Then there were the romances, printed on four to six pages, and the more substantial ‘histories’ which were stories about the past. Books were of various sizes, serving many different purposes and interests. The periodical press developed from the early eighteenth century, combining information about current affairs with entertainment. Newspapers and journals carried information about wars and trade, as well as news of developments in other places

**(i) What is chapbook?**

**Ans** - Chapbook is a term used to describe pocket-size books that are sold by travelling peddlers called chapmen.

**(ii) Who were pedlars?**

**Ans** - Pedlars were those who carries chapbooks, sold for a penny, so that even the poor can read it.

**(iii) When did the periodic press develop?**

**Ans** - The periodical press developed from the early 18th century, combining information about current affairs with entertainment.

## **GEOGRAPHY**

### **Chapter 5. RESOURCES AND DEVELOPMENT**

#### **CLASSIFICATION OF RESOURCES**

**Resources can be classified in the following ways-**

➤ **On the basis of Origin :** (i) Biotic (ii) Abiotic

➤ **On the basis of exhaustibility:**

- (i) Renewable (ii) Non-Renewable

➤ **On the basis of ownership:**

- (i) Individual (ii) Community (iii) National (iv) International

➤ **On the basis of status of development:**

- (i) Potential (ii) Developed (iii) Stock (iv) Reserve

**Agenda 21 is a non-viable act created by United Nations with respect to sustainable development and it is a production of the Earth Summit, a UN conference on environment and growth.**

- This conference was organized in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil in 1992.
  - It is a function order for the UN, other versatile companies, and individualistic governments from all around the world that can be observed at local, global, and national levels.
- The most important aim of the agenda 21 verse is that all the topical governments must make their own Agenda 21. The main target that it actually wants to obtain is universal supportable development

**Soil Types:** The soil of India is classified into the following types:

- Alluvial soil** – It is of two types – Khadar and Bangar. It is found mainly in the Northern Plains and Coastal Strips of eastern coast.
- Black Soil** – It is derived from Deccan Traps. It occurs in areas like Maharashtra, Western Madhya Pradesh and Gujarat. It is known for the cultivation of cotton.
- Red and Yellow Soil** – This soil develops on crystalline igneous rocks in areas of low rainfall in the eastern and southern parts of the Deccan plateau. Found in Odisha and Chhattisgarh.
- Mountain Soil** – It is characterised by the deposition of organic materials derived from the vegetative covers.
- Laterite Soil** – it is the intensively leached soil of the monsoon climate.
- Arid Soil** – It is found in the arid areas of Rajasthan, Punjab and Haryana.
- Forest Soil** – These soils are found in the hilly and mountainous areas where sufficient rain forests exist.

**Soil Erosion:** The removal of soil from one place to another by some natural agent is called soil erosion.

**Measures of Soil conservation**

- |                                 |                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. Contour ploughing            | 5. Terrace farming        |
| 2. Strip cropping               | 6. Shelter belts of trees |
| 3. Plugging of gullies          | 7. Afforestation          |
| 4. Control of mining activities |                           |

---

---

**Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)**

**1. Which one of the following soils is the best for cotton cultivation?**

- (a) Red soil (b) Black soil (c) Laterite soil (d) Alluvial soil

**Ans. (b) Black soil**

**2. Which type of soil develops due to high temperature and evaporation?**

- (a) Arid soil (b) Forest soil (c) Black soil (d) Red soil

**Ans. (d) Red soil**

**3. Which one of the following is responsible for sheet erosion?**

- (a) Underground water (b) Wind (c) Glacier (d) Water

**Ans. (d) water**

**4. Which one of the following is the main cause of land degradation in Madhya Pradesh?**

- (a) Mining (b) Overgrazing (c) Deforestation (d) Over Irrigation



Ans. (b) Overgrazing

**5. Which one of the following terms is used to identify the old and new alluvial respectively?**

- (a) Khadar and Terai                      (b) Terai and Bangar    (c) Bangar and Khadar                      (d) Terai and Duars

Ans. (c) Bangar and Khadar

**6. Which one of the following methods is used to break up the force of wind?**

- (a) Shelter belt                      (b) Strip cropping                      (c) Contour ploughing                      (d) Terrace farming

Ans. (a) Shelter belt

**7. Which one of the following statements refers to the sustainable development?**

- (a) Overall development of various resources.  
(b) Development should take place without damaging the environment.  
(c) Economic development of people.  
(d) Development that meets the desires of the members of all community.

Ans. (b) Development should take place without damaging the environment.

**8. Resource planning is essential for \_\_\_\_\_ existence of all forms of life.**

- (a) Ecological balance                      (b) Sustainable                      (c) Exploitation                      (d) None of these

Ans. (b) Sustainable

**9. What is required for sustained quality of life and global peace?**

- (a) Depletion of resources                      (c) Equitable distribution of resources  
(b) Accumulation of resources                      (d) None of these

Ans. (c) Equitable distribution of resources

### ASSERTION- REASON QUESTIONS

The following questions consist of two statements – Assertion (A) and Reason (R). Answer these questions selecting the appropriate option given below:

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
(b) Both A and R are true and R is not the correct explanation of A.  
(c) A is true, but R is false.  
(d) A is false, but R is true.

**10. Assertion (A):** Afforestation and proper management of grazing can help solve land degradation to some extent.

**Reason (R):** Planting of shelter belts of plants, control on overgrazing, stabilisation of sand dunes by growing thorny bushes are some of the methods to check land degradation in arid areas.

Ans. Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

**11. Assertion (A):** Alluvial as a whole are very fertile.

**Reason (R):** Mostly these soils contain an adequate proportion of potash, phosphoric acid and lime which are ideal for the growth of sugarcane, paddy, wheat and other cereal and pulse crops.

Ans. (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

**12. Assertion (A):** The black soils are made up of extremely fine i.e. clayey material.

**Reason (R):** They are well known for their capacity to hold dryness.

Ans. (c) A is true, but R is false.

**13. Assertion (A):** Arid soil develops on crystalline igneous rocks in areas of low rainfall in the eastern and southern parts of the Deccan plateau.

**Reason (R):** Yellow and red soils are also found in parts of Odisha, Chhattisgarh, Southern parts of the middle Ganga plain and along the piedmont zone of the Western Ghats.

Ans. (d) A is false, but R is true.

**14. Assertion (A):** Forest soils are found in the hilly and mountainous areas where sufficient rain forests are available.

**Reason (R):** The forest soil develops under tropical and subtropical climate with alternate wet and dry seasons.

**Ans.** (c) A is false, but R is true.

**15. Assertion (A):** Resource planning is a complex process which involves identification and inventory of resources across the regions of the country.

**Reason (R):** This involves surveying, mapping and qualitative and quantitative estimation and measurement of the resources.

**Ans.** (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

**Correct the following statements and rewrite them.**

**16. The state of Uttar Pradesh is very well endowed with solar and wind energy but lacks in water resources. (CBQ)**

**Ans:** The state of Rajasthan is very well endowed with solar and wind energy but lacks in water resources.

**17. Soil is the most important non-renewable natural resource.**

**Ans:** Soil is the most important renewable natural resource.

#### VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPES OF QUESTIONS (2 marks)

**18. What do you mean by sustainable development?**

**Ans.** Development should take place without damaging the environment and development in the present should not compromise with the needs of the future generation.

**19. What is net sown area?**

**Ans.** The physical extent of land on which crops are sown and harvested is known as net sown area.

**20. How is cement industry responsible for land degradation?**

**Ans.** The mineral processing like grinding of limestone for cement industry is responsible for land degradation.

**21. Which type of soil in India is most widespread and where ?**

**Ans.** Alluvial soil and in Northern plain.

**22. Why is humus content in laterite soil low?**

**Ans.** Humus content of the soil is low because most of the microorganisms, particularly the decomposers, like bacteria get destroyed due to high temperature.

**23. What is contour ploughing and where it found?**

**Ans.** Ploughing along the contour lines can decelerate the flow of water down the slopes. This is called contour ploughing. Its found in mountain slope.

**24. Absence of which two components can hinder development of an area?**

**Ans.** Corresponding changes in technology and institutional development.

**25. How does over irrigation lead to land degradation?**

**Ans.** Over irrigation leads to water logging that increases salinity and alkalinity in the soil that results in land degradation.

**26. Which soil is the best for cotton cultivation and what is its other name ?**

**Ans.** Black soil and cotton soil.

**27. Name the two crops which can be grown in laterite soil after adopting soil conservation technique.**

**Ans.** Tea and Coffee.

#### SHORT ANSWER TYPES OF QUESTIONS (3 Marks)

**28. Describe any three main features of 'Alluvial Soil' found in India.**

**Ans.** Alluvial Soil is formed in the river deltas of the eastern coast. Its main features are-

- It is widely spread over the northern plains by the three Himalayan rivers systems- The Indus, The Ganga and The Brahmaputra.
- Alluvial Soil is rich in potassium and phosphoric acid and lime.

- It has high water retention capacity.
- And it is highly fertile soil.

**29. Describe the importance of Judicious use of resources.**

Ans. Importance of Judicious use of resources are-

1. Indiscriminate use of resources has led to an environmental and ecological crisis.
2. Most of the resources are non-renewable, if exhausted, they take thousands of years to renew.
3. Resources are available only in limited quantity which are essential for any developmental activity. Their unavailability can lead to socio-economic problems in the world.

**30. Suggest and explain any three ways to protect land from degradation in various states of India.**

Ans. 1. Afforestation

2. Proper management of grazing.
3. Planting of shelter belts of plants.
4. Stabilization of sand dunes by growing thorny bushes.
5. Control of mining activities.
6. Proper discharge and disposal of industrial effluents and wastes after treatment.

**31. 'The issue of sustainability is important for development.' Examine the statement.**

Ans.

1. Sustainable development aims at fulfilling the needs of today without compromising the needs of the future generation.
2. Sustainability is the capability to use the resources judiciously and maintain the ecological balance.
3. It lays emphasis on environmental protection and check environmental degradation

**32. When and why was the Rio De Janeiro Earth summit held?**

Ans. 1992 Rio De Janeiro (Brazil)

To achieve sustainable development in order to combat environment damage, poverty and disease, it laid emphasis on global cooperation mutual needs and shared responsibility.

**33. Write two characteristics each of Khadar and Bangar.**

Ans. Khadar (New Alluvium)

1. New alluvium a new soil
2. Very fertile soil less Kankar nodules

Bangar (Old Alluvium)

1. Old alluvium or old soil
2. Not to fertile, often contains Kankar nodules.

**34. Describe the importance of an equitable distribution of resources in the society.**

Ans. **Importance of equitable distribution of resources:**

1. For a sustained quality of life.
2. To eliminate the difference between rich and poor in the society.
3. To reduce poverty.
4. To maintain Global Peace.
5. To prevent our planet from danger.

**35. "The Earth has enough resources to meet the needs of all but not enough to satisfy the greed of even one person." How is this statement relevant to the discussion of development? Discuss.**

Ans. Gandhiji was very apt in voicing his concern about resource conservation.

- (i) He said there is enough for everybody's needs and not for anybody's greed.
- (ii) He regarded the greedy and selfish individuals and the exploitative nature of modern technology as the root cause for resource depletion at the global level.
- (iii) He was against mass production wanted to replace it with the production by the production by the masses.

**36. Why is there a need for planning resources in India?**

Ans. There is a need for planning resources.

- (i) We need to have resource planning in India since India has enormous diversity in the availability of resources.
- (ii) There are regions which are rich in certain types of resources but are deficient in some other resources.
- (iii) This call for balance resource planning at national, state and regional levels.

**37. Which factors determine the use of land?**

Ans. Factors are:

- (i) Physical factors – topography, climate, soil types.
- (ii) Human factors - Population density, technological capability and culture and tradition, etc.

**LONG ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS (3 marks)**

**38. “Consequences of environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries.” Justify the statement.**

Ans. Consequences of environmental degradation do not respect national or state boundaries.

- (i) The increase in pollution in land, water, air, noise and resulting in degradation of the environment cannot be overlooked.
- (ii) Pollution of river waters affects all as most of the rivers pass through different states.
- (iii) Air pollution caused by the presence of high proportion of undesirable gases adversely affects human health and atmosphere as a whole.
- (iv) Thermal pollution of river water affects the aquatic life irrespective of state and national boundaries.

**39. What are the various methods of soil conservation?**

Methods of soil conservation:

- (i) **Contour ploughing** – Ploughing along the contour lines can check the flow of water down the slope. It is called contour ploughing. it can be practised on the hills.
- (ii) **Terrace cultivation** – Steps can be out on the slopes making terraces. It restricts soil erosion. It is practised in western and central Himalayas.
- (iii) **Strip cropping** – Large fields can be divided into strips. Strips of grass are left to grow between the crops. This breaks up the force of wind. This method is called strip cropping.
- (iv) **Planting of Shelter belts** – planting lines of trees to create shelter also checks the soil erosion. Rows of such trees are called Shelter Belts. These shelter belts have contributed significantly to the stabilisation of sand dunes and in stabilising the desert in western India.

**40. By what names is black soil also known as? In which regions are black soils formed and why?**

Ans. These soils are black in colour and are also known as regur soils. Since black soil is ideal for growing cotton, it is also known as black cotton soil.

It is believed that climatic conditions along with the parent rock material are the important factors for the formation of black soil. The type of soil is typical of the Deccan Trap (Basalt) region spread over northwest Deccan plateau and is made up of lava flows. They cover the plateaus of Maharashtra, Saurashtra, Malwa, Madhya Pradesh, Chhattisgarh and the extend in South east direction along the Godavari and the Krishna Valleys.

**41. Give any four characteristics of arid soil of India.**

Ans. Arid soils range from red to brown in colour.

- (i) They are sandy in texture and saline in nature. In some areas the salt content is very high and common salt is obtained by evaporating the water.
- (ii) Due to dry climate, high temperature, evaporation is faster and the soil lacks humus and moisture.
- (iii) The lower layers of the soil are occupied by Kankar because of the increasing calcium content downwards.
- (iv) After proper irrigation these soils become cultivable as has been in the case of western Rajasthan.

**42. How have technical and economical Developments led to more consumption of resources?**

Ans.

- (i) Technological development has led to more industries and therefore use of natural resources has increased.
- (ii) There has been more development of new resources which has helped in the economic mobility of the resources.
- (iii) As means of transportation and communication are developing fast, they help in the mobility of the resources.
- (iv) Due to technological advancement, techniques of mining and quarrying are also improving, leading to safer mining and resources and more economic development.
- (v) Green Revolution led to the introduction of latest mechanical devices, fertilisers, HYV seeds, etc, leading to more production and consumption of resources.

**SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS**

**(4 Marks)**

**43. Read the passage given below and answer the question that follows:**

Arid soils range from red to brown in colour. They are generally sandy in texture and saline in nature. In some areas the salt content is very high and common salt is obtained by evaporating the water. Due to the dry climate, high temperature, evaporation is faster and the soil lacks humus and moisture. The lower horizons of the soil are occupied by Kankar because of the increasing calcium content downwards. The Kankar layer formation in the bottom horizons restrict the infiltration of water. After proper irrigation, these soils become cultivable as has been in the case of western Rajasthan.

**(i) What are the two components lacking by dry climate and high temperature?**

Ans. Humus and moisture.

**(ii) The lower horizons of the soil are occupied by what and why?**

Ans. The lower horizons of the soil are occupied by Kankar because of the increasing calcium content downwards.

**(iii) What does the Kankar layer formation restrict in the bottom horizons?**

Ans. The Kankar layer formations in the bottom horizons restrict the infiltration of water.

**44. Read the passage given below and answer the question that follows:**

This type of soil is typical of the Deccan trap (Basalt) region spread over northwest Deccan plateau and is made up of lava flows. They cover the plateau of Maharashtra, Saurashtra, Malwa, Madhya Pradesh and Chhattisgarh and extend in the south east direction along the Godavari and the Krishna valleys.

**(i) Identify the type of soil.**

Ans. The type of soil is Black Soil.

**(ii) What factors has led to the formation of the above soil?**

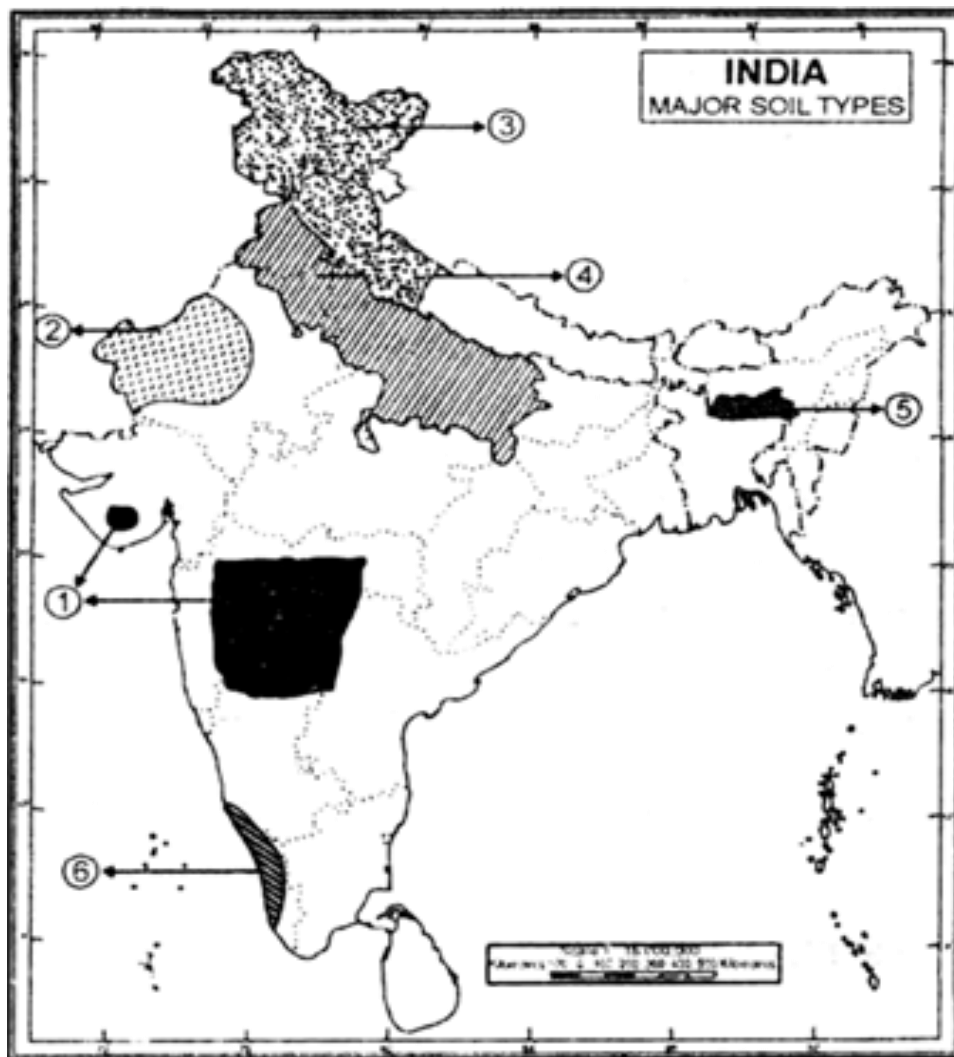
Ans. Climatic condition along with the parent rock material are important factors for the formation of Black soil. It is also made up of lava flows.

**(iii) Name the crop for which this soil is ideal.**

Ans. Cotton

**MAP BASED QUESTIONS**

45. On the outline map of India, identify the soil types marked by 1 – 6 and write their names in the blank space.



- Ans. (1) Black soil  
 (2) Desert (Arid) soil  
 (3) Mountainous soil  
 (4) Alluvial soil  
 (5) Red and Yellow soil  
 (6) Laterite soil

## Chapter 06. FOREST AND WILDLIFE RESOURCES

### Importance of Biodiversity

The plants, animals, and micro-organisms re-create the quality of the air we breathe, the water we drink, and the soil that produces our food without which we cannot survive. Forests play a key role in the ecological system as these are also the primary producers on which all other living beings depend. The forest ecosystems are repositories of some of the country's most valuable forest products, minerals, and other resources that meet the demands of the rapidly expanding industrial-urban economy.

### Project Tiger

The major threats to the tiger population are numerous, such as poaching for trade, shrinking habitat, depletion of prey base species, growing human population, etc. Since India and Nepal provide habitat to about two-thirds of the surviving tiger population in the world, these two nations became prime targets for poaching and illegal trading. "Project Tiger", one of the most well-publicized wildlife

campaigns in the world, was launched in 1973. Tiger conservation has been viewed not only as an effort to save an endangered species but with equal importance as a means of preserving biotypes of sizeable magnitude.

- Corbett National Park in Uttarakhand,
- Sunderbans National Park in West Bengal,
- Bandhavgarh National Park in Madhya Pradesh,
- Sariska Wildlife Sanctuary in Rajasthan,
- Manas Tiger Reserve in Assam
- Periyar Tiger Reserve in Kerala are some of the tiger reserves of India.

### **Types of Forests and Wildlife Resources**

Types of forests found in India-

- **Reserved forests:** More than half of the total forest land has been declared reserved forests. Reserved forests are regarded as the most valuable as far as the conservation of forest and wildlife resources is concerned.

- **Protected forests:** Almost 1/3rd of the total forest area is protected forest, as declared by the Forest Department. This forest land is protected from any further depletion.

- **Unclassed forests:** These are other forests and wastelands belonging to both government and private individuals and communities.

\* Reserved and protected forests are also referred to as permanent forests.

### **Joint Forest Management (JFM)**

JFM furnishes a good example for involving local communities in the management and restoration of degraded forests. The program has been in formal existence since 1988 when the state of Odisha passed the first resolution for joint forest management. JFM depends on the formation of local (village) institutions that undertake protection activities mostly on degraded forest land managed by the forest department. In return, the members of these communities are entitled to intermediary benefits like non-timbers forest produces and share in the timber harvested by 'successful protection'.

### **Sacred Groves**

Sacred groves are a form of nature worship practiced by the tribal people of India. Tribes consider forests as Gods and Goddesses and preserve them in their pristine form. These patches of forest or parts of large forests have been left untouched by the local people and any interference with them is banned. Certain societies revere a particular tree that they have preserved from time immemorial. The Mundas and the Santhal of the ChotaNagpur region worship mahua and kadamba trees, and the tribals of Odisha and Bihar worship the tamarind and mango trees during weddings. To many of us, peepal and banyan trees are considered sacred.

### **Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)**

**1. Which of the following is not one of the reasons for depletion of forests?**

- (a) Mining
- (b) Multi-purpose river valley projects
- (c) Grazing
- (d) Creation of shelter belts

Ans: (d) Creation of shelter belts

**2. Which of the following conservation strategies does not directly involve community participation?**

- (a) Joint forest management
- (b) Beti Bachao Andolan
- (c) Chipko Movement
- (d) Demarcation of Wildlife sanctuaries

Ans: (d) Demarcation of Wildlife sanctuaries

**3. The forest cover in our country has recently increased due to -**

- (a) Increase in natural forest growth
- (b) Increase in net sown area
- (c) Plantation by different agencies
- (d) None of the above

Ans: (c) Plantation by different agencies

**4. Substantial parts of the tribal belts in north -eastern India have been deforested by:**

- (a) Shifting cultivation
- (c) Infrastructure development

(b) Mining (d) None of the above

Ans: (a) Shifting cultivation

**5. Forest and wastelands belonging to both private individuals and government are known as:**

- (a) Sacred groves (c) Protected forest  
(b) Reserved forests (d) Unclassed forests

Ans: (d) Unclassed forests

**6. In which of the following tiger reserves have the local communities fought for conservation of the forests?**

- (a) Manas Tiger Reserve (c) Simlipal Bio Reserve  
(b) Periyar Tiger Reserve (d) Sariska Tiger Reserve

Ans: (d) Sariska Tiger Reserve

**7. Which of the following options represent potential measures that can be taken to mitigate the threats posed to the tiger population and biodiversity?**

1. Banning hunting, giving legal protection to their habitats, and restricting trade in wildlife
2. Prohibiting the visit of the public into the forest area.
3. Establishing wildlife sanctuaries and National Parks
4. Converting forests into Reserved and Protected forests

**Options:**

- (a) Statement 1 and 2 are correct.  
(b) Statement 2, 3 & 4 are correct  
(c) Statement 2 is correct.  
(d) Statement 1, 3 & 4 are correct.

Ans: (d) Statement 1, 3 & 4 are correct.

**8. In which one the following states Periyar tiger reserves located?**

- (a) Kerala (b) Chhattisgarh (c) Tamil Nadu (d) West Bengal

Ans: (a) Kerala

**9. What was the aim of the Chipko movement?**

- (a) Human Right (b) Agriculture Expansion (c) Political Rights (d) Forest Conservation

Ans: (d) Forest Conservation

**10. Sariska wildlife sanctuary is located in which state?**

- (a) Rajasthan (b) Uttar Pradesh (c) Gujarat (d) West Bengal

Ans: (a) Rajasthan

**11. 'Project Tiger' was launched in which year?**

- (a) 1951 (b) 1973 (c) 1993 (d) 2009

Ans: (b) 1973

**12. Which one of the following movements is not associated with the protection of trees?**

- (a) Chipko Movement (c) Project Tiger  
(b) Navdanya Andolan (d) Beej Bachao Andolan

Ans: (c) Project Tiger

**13. In which of the following states is Bandhavgarh National Park located?**

- (a) Gujarat (b) Assam (c) Madhya Pradesh (d) Kerala

Ans: (c) Madhya Pradesh

**14. Which one is considered as Primary Producers in an ecological system?**

- (a) Forest (b) Animals (c) Sun (d) Humans

Ans: (a) Forest

**15. Which of the following states has the largest area under Permanent Forests?**

- (a) Nagaland (b) Assam (c) Madhya Pradesh (d) Kerala

Ans: (c) Madhya Pradesh

**16. In which year the Indian Wildlife protection Act was implemented?**

- (a) 1970 (b) 1971 (c) 1972 (d) 1974

Ans: (c) 1972



**17. Assertion: The Forest Department made new laws and rules to protect the forests it was planting.**

**Reason: Through these rules, it tried to ensure that the old forests did not vanish completely but were cut more carefully.**

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion
- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct but Reason is not correct explanation for Assertion
- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect
- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

Ans: (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

**18. Assertion: The destruction of forests and wildlife is not just a biological issue.**

**Reason: It has also increasingly marginalized and impoverished many indigenous and forest dependent communities.**

- (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion
- (b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct but Reason is not correct explanation for Assertion
- (c) Assertion is correct but Reason is incorrect
- (d) Both Assertion and Reason are incorrect

Ans: (a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation for Assertion

### **VERY SHORT QUESTION ANSWER**

**(2 marks)**

**19. Explain the term Biodiversity.**

Ans. Biodiversity is immensely rich in wildlife and cultivated species, diverse in form and function but closely integrated in a system through multiple networks of interdependencies.

**20. How were forest depleted by tribal people of India?**

Ans. Substantial part of tribal belts, especially in the north-eastern and central India has cleared the forest for practicing shifting cultivation or Jhumming agriculture.

**21. Which Forest are protected forest?**

Ans. Almost one third of the total forest are protected forest, as declared by forest department. These forest lands are protected from any further depletion.

**22. Which Forest is categorized as unclassed forest?**

Ans. These are other forest belonging to government and private individual or communities.

**23. What do you understand by joint forest management program?**

Ans. Joint Forest Management was a movement launched to manage and restore degraded forests by involving the local communities.

### **SHORT QUESTION ANSWER**

**(3 marks)**

**24. How are flora and fauna in India under great threat?**

Ans. India is one of the world's richest countries in flora and fauna. But this flora and fauna are under great threat due to our insensitivity to our environment. It is estimated that at least 10% of India's recorded wild flora and 20% of its mammals are on the threatened list. Many smaller animals like insects and plants have become extinct.

**25. What were the provisions of India wildlife act of 1972?**

Ans. It was implemented with various provision for protecting habitat. The trust of program was towards protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species by bending hunting giving legal protection to their habitat and restricting trade in wildlife.

**26. How the villagers of Alwar district of Rajasthan are are struggling to conserve their forest and wild life?**

Ans. The inhabitants of 5 villages in the Alwar district of Rajasthan have declared 1200 hectares of forest as badave dock of century declaring their own set of rules and regulation which do not align hunting and are protecting the wildlife against outside encroachment

**27. Grazing and fuel-wood collection are responsible for deforestation in India". Support the statement with suitable reasons.**

**Ans.**

- Overgrazing destroys the saplings and plants are tom out by the roots by animals
- Overgrazing also leads to soil erosion. Soil erosion is one of the important factor for deforestation.
- While collecting fuel wood the locals also destroy the trees, which leads to deforestation

**28. Write three major reasons for the depletion of forest cover.**

**Ans.**

1. Deforestation for agricultural purposes.
2. Shifting cultivation which is still practiced in substantial parts of tribal belts.
3. Large-scale development of river valley projects.

**29. Mention a social impact of deforestation**

**Ans.** In many societies, women bear the major responsibility of collection of fuel, fodder, Water and other basic subsistence needs. As these resources are depleted, the drudgery of women increases and sometimes they have to walk for more than 10 km to collect these resources.

**30. Write four most important causes of environmental destruction/degradation.**

**Ans.**

- Unequal access to resources.
- Inequitable consumption of resources.
- Differential sharing of responsibility for environmental well-being.
- Over-population.

**31. How has (JFM) proved to be beneficial in Orissa?**

**Ans.** **Joint Forest Management** furnishes a good example for involving local communities in the management and restoration of degraded forests. The program has been in formal existence since 1988 when the state of Odisha passed the first resolution for joint forest management. JFM depends on the formation of local (village) institutions that undertake protection activities mostly on degraded forest land managed by the forest department. In return, the members of these communities are entitled to intermediary benefits like non-timbers forest produces and share in the timber harvested by 'successful protection'.

**32. Why is biodiversity important for human lives?**

**Ans.** Importance of Biodiversity-

- The plants, animals, and micro-organisms re-create the quality of the air we breathe, the water we drink, and the soil that produces our food without which we cannot survive.
- Forests play a key role in the ecological system as these are also the primary producers on which all other living beings depend.
- The forest ecosystems are repositories of some of the country's most valuable forest products, minerals, and other resources that meet the demands of the rapidly expanding industrial-urban economy.

**33. What is the Classification of forests on administrative basis and explain them.**

**Ans.**

- **Reserved forest:** Regarded most restricted and valuable forest. Local people are prohibited. These forests enjoy judicial protection. More than half of the total forest land has been declared reserved forests.
- **Protected Forests:** Protected from any further depletion. Sometimes the local community has got the rights for activities like hunting and grazing as they are living on the fringes of the forest because they sustain their livelihood wholly or partially from forest resources or products. Almost one-third of the total forest area is protected forest, as declared by the Forest Department. Reserved and protected forests are also referred to as permanent forest
- **Unclassed forest:** These are other forests and wastelands belonging to both government and private individuals and communities

## LONG ANSWER QUESTION

(5 marks)

**34. What steps have been taken by the government for the conservation of forest and wildlife in India? Explain.**

**Ans. There are various steps taken by the government for the conservation of forest and wildlife in India: -**

- National parks, biosphere and wildlife sanctuaries: To protect the biodiversity, the Indian government has established national parks, sanctuaries and biosphere reserves.
- The Indian Wildlife Protection Act: The Indian Wildlife Protection Act was implemented in 1972, with various provisions for protecting habitats. An all India list of protected species was also published. The thrust of the program was towards protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species by banning hunting, giving legal protection to their habitats and restricting trade in wildlife.
- Projects for protecting specific animals: The central government has also announced several projects for protecting specific animals which were greatly threatened, including the tiger, the one-horned rhinoceros, the Kashmir stag or hangul, the three types of crocodiles – the freshwater crocodile, the saltwater crocodile and the Gharial, the Asiatic lion and others.

**35. “Maintenance of ecological system is of utmost importance.” How can you contribute to conserve it and what values are developed through this activity?**

**Ans.** We humans along with all living organisms form a complex web of ecological system in which we are only a part and very much dependent on this system for our own existence. For example, the plants, animals and micro-organisms re-create the quality of the air we breathe, the water we drink and the soil that produces our food without which we cannot survive. Forests play a key role in the ecological system as these are also the primary producers on which all other living beings depend.

- We should save our environment by switching to green technology and by contributing less to the emission of carbon dioxide.
- We should plant more and more trees, say no to plastic bags, travel by public transport, etc.
- It will improve the quality of our lives as well as our children and will save our money to switch to alternate sources for power.

**36. Describe the role of the community in forest and wildlife conservation.**

**Ans.** Role of the community in forest and wildlife conservation:

- In some areas of India, local communities are struggling to conserve forests (their habitat) along with government officials. In Sariska Tiger Reserve, Rajasthan, villagers have fought against mining by citing the Wildlife Protection Act.
- The inhabitants of five villages in the Alwar district of Rajasthan have declared 1,200 hectares of forest as the Bhairondev Dakav ‘Sonchuri’, declaring their own set of rules and regulations which do not allow hunting and protecting the wildlife against any outside encroachments.
- The famous Chipko movement in the Himalayas successfully resisted deforestation and showed that community afforestation with indigenous species can be enormously successful.
- Farmers and citizen groups like the Beej Bachao Andolan in Tehri and Navdanya have shown that diversified crop production without the use of synthetic chemicals is possible and economically viable.
- Joint Forest Management is a program that involves local communities in the management and restoration of degraded forests.

**37. Write a note on good practices towards conserving forest and wildlife.**

**Ans.** In India, joint forest management (JFM) programme furnishes a good example of involving local communities in the management and restoration of degraded forests. The programme has been in formal existence since 1988 when the state of Odisha passed the first resolution for joint forest management. JFM depends on the formation of local (village) institutions that undertake protection activities mostly on degraded forest land managed by the forest department. In return, the members

of these communities are entitled to intermediary benefits like non-timber forest produce and share in the timber harvested by 'successful protection'. The clear lesson from the dynamics of both environmental destruction and reconstruction in India is that local communities everywhere have to be involved in some kind of natural resource management. But there is still a long way to go before local communities are at the centre stage in decision-making. Accept only those economic or developmental activities that are people-centric, environment-friendly and economically rewarding.

### CASE BASED QUESTION

(1+1+2 Marks)

#### 38. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:

In the 1960s and 1970s, conservationists demanded a national wildlife protection programme. The Indian Wildlife (Protection) Act was implemented in 1972, with various provisions for protecting habitats. An all India list of protected species was also published. The thrust of the programme was towards protecting the remaining population of certain endangered species by banning hunting, giving legal protection to their habitats, and restricting trade in wildlife. Subsequently, central and many state governments established national parks and wildlife sanctuaries about which you have already studied. The central government also announced several projects for protecting specific animals, which were gravely threatened, including the tiger, the one horned rhinoceros, the Kashmir stag or hangul, three types of crocodiles – fresh water crocodile, saltwater crocodile and the Gharial, the Asiatic lion, and others. Most recently, the Indian elephant, black buck (chinkara), the great Indian bustard (godawan) and the snow leopard, etc. have been given full or partial legal protection against hunting and trade throughout India.

#### (i) Which act was implemented in 1972?

Ans. The Indian Wildlife (Protection) Act.

#### (ii) Who demanded the National Wildlife protection program?

Ans. The conservationists demand the national Wildlife protection program.

#### (iii) Which animal have been recently given full or partial legal protection against hunting and trade throughout India? Name some animals which were announced gravely threatened by the central government.

Ans. The Indian elephant, black buck, the great Indian bustard and the snow leopard. The tiger, the one horned rhinoceros, the Kashmir stag or hangul, three types of crocodiles – fresh water crocodile, saltwater crocodile and the Gharial, the Asiatic lion, and others.

## Chapter 7. WATER RESOURCE

**Multipurpose project:** They help to control flood, check soil erosion, provide water for irrigation and drinking purpose generates electricity for industries, villages, cities, provide inland navigation, help in prevention of wildlife and development of fisheries.

**Rainwater harvesting:** It is a technique of increasing the recharge of groundwater by capturing and Storing rainwater by constructing wells, percolating pits and check dams.

#### Main objectives of the rainwater harvesting:

- To meet increasing demand of water to reduce runoff
- To augment the groundwater storage and raise the water table
- To reduce the groundwater pollution
- To improve the quality of groundwater
- To supplement domestic water requirement during summer and long dry spells.

#### Advantages of multipurpose projects:

- Irrigation
- Hydro-electricity for our industries and homes
- Water supply for domestic and industrial use
- Flood control
- Inland navigation
- Pisciculture and fish breeding
- Soil conservation through afforestation

**Disadvantages of multipurpose projects:**

- Their failure to fulfil their basic objectives like flood control and the disadvantages resulting out of building of such project
- Regulating and damming of rivers affect the natural flow of the rivers, causes excessive
- Sedimentation and adversely affect the aquatic life.
- The reservoir that are created in the flood plains overflow and submerge the existing vegetation and soil.
- Multipurpose projects leads to large scale displacement of local communities and to loss of their, Livelihood.
- Excessive use of water and over irrigation on account of the project leads to land degradation and causes water borne diseases, pests and the pollution.

**Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)**

**1. Which one of the following statements is not an argument in favour of multipurpose river projects?**

- A) Multipurpose project bring water to those area which suffer from water scarcity.
- B) Multipurpose projects by regulating water flow help to control flood.
- C) Multipurpose project leads to large scale of displacement and loss of livelihood.
- D) Multipurpose projects generate electricity for our industries and our homes.

ANS: C) Multipurpose project leads to large scale of displacement and loss of livelihood.

**2. Which of the following are not causes of water scarcity?**

- A) Growing population and growing of water intensive crop.
- B) Expansion of irrigation facilities and individual wells and tube wells in farms.
- C) Industries
- D) Water harvesting technique and rooftop harvesting system.

ANS: Both C) Industries and D) water harvesting technique and roof top harvesting system.

**3. Bhakra Nangal river valley project is made on the river.**

- A) Sutlej-Beas
- B) Ravi-Chenab
- C) Ganga
- D) Son

ANS: A) Sutlej- Beas

**4. The diversion channels seen in the Western Himalayas are called.**

- A) Guls or Kuls
- B) Khadins
- C) Johads
- D) Recharge Pits

ANS: A) Guls or Kuls

**5. Bamboo drip irrigation system is prevalent in.**

- A) Manipur
- B) Meghalaya
- C) Mizoram
- D) Madhya Pradesh

ANS: B) Meghalaya

**6. Which of the following social movements are not a resistance to multipurpose projects?**

- I) Narmada Bachao Aandolan
- II) Tehri Dam Aandolan
- III) Navdanya
- IV) Chipko Movement
- A) I and II
- B) I and III
- C) II and IV
- D) III and IV

ANS: D) III and IV

**7. The only state which has made rooftop rainwater harvesting structure compulsory to all the houses is.**

- A) Andhra Pradesh                      B) Karnataka                      C) Tamil Nadu                      D) West Bengal

ANS: C) Tamil Nadu

**8. From ancient times evidence of sophisticated irrigation work has also been found in Nagarjunakonda. It is located in \_\_\_\_\_?**

- A) Andhra Pradesh                      B) Odisha                      C) Karnataka                      D) Tamil Nadu

ANS: A) Andhra Pradesh

**9. Narmada Bachao Aandolan is a non-governmental organisation (NGO) that mobilise tribal people, farmers, environmentalists and Human Rights activist against the .....dam being built across the river Narmada.**

- A) Sardar Sarovar                      B) Tehri Dam                      C) Nagarjuna Sagar Dam                      D) Bhakra Nangal Dam

ANS: A) Sardar Sarovar

**10. What is the contribution of hydroelectricity in the total generation of electricity?**

- A) 52%                      B) 42%                      C) 32%                      D) 22%

ANS: D) 22%

**11. Which of the following structure are known as “tankas”?**

- A) Underground tanks for storing rainwater harvested from rooftops for drinking purpose.  
 B) Tanks constructed on rooftop for storing rainwater.  
 C) Tanks constructed in agriculture field to store rainwater.  
 D) Tanks constructed to store flood water.

ANS: A) Underground tanks for storing rainwater harvested from rooftops for drinking purpose.

**12. Which of the following area would you immediately associate with water scarcity?**

- A) Hills of North Eastern India                      B) The Ganga plains  
 C) Deserts of Rajasthan                      D) Coastal area of Odisha

ANS: C) Deserts of Rajasthan

**13. Which of the following environmental damages are not included due to multipurpose projects?**

- A) Waterborne diseases and pests.                      B) Volcanic activity  
 C) Pollution resulting from excessive use of water                      D) Earthquakes

ANS: B) Volcanic activity.

**14. Which one of the following is not correct?**

- A) Orissa – Hirakud                      B) Uttarakhand - Tehri  
 C) Karnataka -Sala                      D) Rajasthan - Rana Pratap Sagar

ANS: C) Karnataka – Sala

**15. What are the causes of the Indian rivers becoming toxic?**

- A) Fossils                      B) Agriculture                      C) Conservation of water                      D) Industrialisation.

ANS: D) Industrialisation.

**16. Jawaharlal Nehru proudly proclaimed the dam as the.....**

- A) Saviours of India                      B) Temples of modern India  
 C) Future of India                      D) Complexes of India

ANS: B) Temples of a modern India

**17. Match the river with the dam in which rivers they are built.**

A)	Mahanadi	I)	Bhakra Nangal
B)	Sutlej	II)	Sardar sarovar
C)	Narmada	III)	Nagarjuna sagar
D)	Krishan	IV)	Hirakud

A) a-iv, b-ii, c-I, d-iii

B) a-ii, b-i, c-iv, d-iii

C) a-iv, b-i, c-ii, d-iii

D) a-iii, b-iv, c-ii, d-i

ANS: C) a-iv, b-i, c-ii, d-iii

**18. Which one of the following is an adverse effect of dams?**

- A) Interstate water disputes  
B) Excessive sedimentation of reservoir  
C) Displacement of population  
D) All the above.

**ANS:** D) All the above

**19. Assertion (A): Today dams are built not just for irrigation but for electricity generation water supply for domestic and industrial uses flood control, inland navigation and fish breeding.**

**Reason (R): Hence dams are now referred to as multipurpose projects where the many uses of the impounded water are integrated with one another.**

- A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
B) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.  
C) A is true but R is false.  
D) A is false but R is true.

**ANS:** A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.

**20. Assertion (A): In ancient India along with the sophisticated hydraulic structure there existed and extraordinary traditions of water harvesting system.**

**Reason (R): Rainwater or palar pani as commonly referred to in these parts, it considered the purest form of natural water.**

- A) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
B) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.  
C) A is true but R is false.  
D) A is true but R is false.

**ANS:** B) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.

#### **VERY SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

**(2 Marks)**

**21. Explain the cause of water scarcity?**

**ANS:** Water scarcity is caused by the over exploitation, excessive use and unequal access to water among different social groups.

**22. What is a dam? What are the benefits of dam?**

**ANS:** A dam is a barrier across flowing water that obstructs, directs or retards the flow, often creating a reservoir. Dams are built for irrigation, electricity generation, water supply for domestic and industrial use etc.

**23. How are dams responsible for causing floods?**

- ANS:** i) Ironically, the dams that were constructed to control floods have triggered floods due sedimentation in the reservoir.  
ii) Big dams can be successful in controlling flood at the time of excessive rainfall.  
iii) Release of water from dams during the heavy rains aggravate the flood situation.

**24. What were 'Kuls' or 'Guls'?**

**ANS:** These are the diversion channels for irrigational purposes these are mainly used in western Himalayas for water harvesting and agriculture.

**25. What were 'Johads' and 'Khadins'?**

**ANS:** In arid and semi-arid region, agricultural field were converted into rain fed storage structures that allowed the water to stand and moisten the soil. These were called 'Khadins' in Jaisalmer and 'Johads' in other parts of Rajasthan.

**26. What does 'Palar Pani' means?**

**ANS:** Rain water or 'palar pani' as commonly referred to in parts of Rajasthan is considered the purest form of natural water.

**27. What is bamboo drip irrigation?**

**ANS:** In Meghalaya, a 200 years old system of tapping stream and spring water by using bamboo pipes, is practised. It is called bamboo drip irrigation.

**28. What are 'Tankas'?**

**ANS:** Tankas were underground storing tanks of drinking water in arid and semi-arid regions of Rajasthan. Tankas were big huge tank for storing rainwater from the rooftop of all the houses.

**29. Why were multipurpose project launched after independence of India?**

**ANS:** Multipurpose project, launched after independence with their integrated water resources management approach, where thought of as the vehicle that would lead the nation to development and progress, overcoming the handicap of its colonial past.

**30. How do dams create conflicts between people?**

**ANS:** i) In Gujarat the Sabarmati- basin farmers were agitated and almost caused a riot over the higher priority given to water supply in urban areas particularly during the drought  
ii) Inter-state water disputes are also becoming common with regard to sharing the cost and benefits of the multipurpose projects.

**SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

**(3 MARKS)**

**31. What are the main causes of water scarcity?**

**ANS:** Main causes of water scarcity are:

- i) **Overpopulation:** Water scarcity may be an outcome of a large and growing population which result in greater demand for water and unequal access to it.
- ii) **Commercialisation of agriculture:** After the success of the Green Revolution farmers are producing commercial crops. The commercial crops need more water for irrigation.
- iii) **Urbanisation:** Urbanisation is another factor for scarcity of water since new lifestyle have developed in the urban cities over exploitation of water continuous.

**32. What do you know about 'Narmada Bachao Andolan'?**

**ANS:** i) Save Narmada movement is a non-governmental organisation.

- ii) It mobilised tribal people, farmers, environmentalist and Human Rights activist against the Sardar Sarovar Dam being built across the Narmada River in Gujarat.
- iii) Recently it has refocused its aim to rehabilitate displaced people.

**33. Explain any three methods of rain water harvesting since ancient time?**

**ANS:** i) **Guls or Kuls:** In hilly and mountain regions people-built diversion channels called Guls or Kuls in the Western Himalayas. A Guls or Kuls leads to a circular village tank from which water is released as and when required.  
ii) **Khadins and Johads :** In arid and semi-arid regions, agriculture fields were converted into rain fed storage structure that allow the water to stand and moisten the soil, called khadins in Jaisalmer and johads in other part of Rajasthan.  
iii) **Tankas:** Tankas were underground storing tanks of drinking water in arid and semi-arid regions of Rajasthan. Tankas were big huge tank for storing rainwater from the rooftop of all the houses.

**34. What is Gendathur village renowned for?**

**ANS:** i) The villagers of Gendathur village had installed in their household rooftop rainwater harvesting system to meet their water needs  
ii) Nearly 200 households had installed this system and the village earned a rare distinction of being rich in rain water.  
iii) Gendathur receives an annual precipitation of 1000 mm and with 80% of collection efficiently.

**35. Why did Jawaharlal Nehru proudly proclaim the dams as the 'temples of modern India'?**

**ANS:** i) Multipurpose projects launch after independence with their integrated water resources management approach.  
ii) Where thought of as the vehicle that would lead to the knees and to development and progress.  
iii) Jawaharlal Nehru proclaimed the dam as the temple of modern India as it would irrigate the development of agriculture and village economy with rapid industrialisation and growth of the urban economy.

**36. Explain the river water dispute between the states of India?**

**ANS:** i) Krishna Godavari dispute is due to the objections raised by the government of Andhra Pradesh and Karnataka.



- ii) It is regarding the diversion of more water at Koyna by the Maharashtra government for a multipurpose project.
- iii) This would reduce the downstream flow in their states with adverse consequences for agriculture and industries.
- iv) Similarly dispute arises as Kaveri issues between the state of Karnataka and Tamilnadu and Yamuna water dispute between Haryana and Delhi government regarding the use of water.

**37. Why is the practice of rooftop rainwater harvesting slowly declining in Rajasthan which state has made rooftop rainwater harvesting compulsory?**

- ANS:** i) In Rajasthan sadly the practice of rooftop rainwater harvesting is on decline due to available of plenty of water from perennial Indira Gandhi canal.
- ii) New generation consider stored water of rainwater unhygienic so they don't prefer to drink that water.

Tamilnadu is the state which has made rooftop rainwater harvesting compulsory.

**38. Give a brief description of hydrological cycle.**

- ANS:** i) The process of hydrological cycle begins with the evaporation process due to heat of sun on all water bodies of the Earth including the sea and oceans.
- ii) these minute particles of the water then get condensed in this process of condensation clouds are formed with dust particles and pollen grains present in the atmosphere.
  - iii) when saturations take place the clouds precipitate in the form of rain or snow, does fresh water then becomes surface run of water in the form of rivers, ponds and lakes these water again get drain into the sea or oceans and forms a hydrological process.

**39. How does urbanization and urban lifestyle style lead to over exploitation of water?**

- ANS:** Multiplying urban centres with large and dense population and urban Lifestyle have not only added to water and energy requirement but have further aggravated the problem. Fragile water resource like groundwater is being over exploited and have causes their depletions in several cities.

**LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS**

**(5 marks )**

**40. What are the advantages and disadvantages of multipurpose projects?**

**ANS: Advantages of multipurpose projects:**

- i) multipurpose projects are mainly used for irrigation.
- ii) it is used to generate hydroelectricity for our industries and homes.
- iii) it is helpful to control flood.
- iv) it is helpful for inland navigation.
- v) it is used for pisciculture fish breeding.

**Disadvantages of multipurpose projects:**

- i) Multipurpose project causes excessive sedimentation.
- ii) It's lead to large scale displacement of local communities and to loss of their livelihood.
- iii) It causes water borne diseases pests and pollution.
- iv) It affects the natural flow of Aquatic life.

**41. How have multipurpose projects and large Dam been the cause of many new social movements?**

- ANS:** i) Narmada Bachao Aandolan and Tehri Dam Aandolan etc where the movement to resist large scale displacement of local communities. Local people often had to give up their land, livelihood and their control over resources for the greater good of the nation.
- ii) Irrigation has changed the cropping pattern from shifting to commercial crops it is responsible for salinisation of the soil. At the same time it has its social impact by increasing the social gap between the rich landowner's and the landless poor.
  - iii) Dams also created conflicts between the people wanting different use and the benefits from the same water resources in Gujarat the Sabarmati basin farmers where agitated over the priority given to water supply in the urban areas particularly during droughts.

- iv) Inter states water dispute are also common with regard to sharing the cost and the benefits of the multipurpose project.

### CASE BASED QUESTIONS

(4 Marks)

#### 42. Read the source given below and answer the questions:

Narmada Bachao Aandolan or save Narmada. Movement is a non-governmental organisation (NGO) that mobilise tribal people, farmer and environmentalist and Human Rights activist against the Sardar Sarovar Dam being built across the Narmada River in Gujarat. It originally focused on the environmental issues related to trees that would be submerge under the dam water. Recently it has refocused the aim to enable poor citizen especially the outers (displays people) to get full rehabilitations facility from the government. People fell that there suffering would not be in vein accepted the trauma of displacement believing in the promise of irrigate field and plentiful harvest. So often the survival of Rihand told us that they accepted their suffering as a sacrifice for the sake of their Nation. But now after 30 bitter years of being adrift their livelihood having even being more precious they keep asking “are we the only one chosen to make sacrifice for the nation”.

**(i) Where is Narmada River located? Name the multipurpose project made in Narmada.**

**ANS:** Narmada River is located in Gujarat and multipurpose project made in Narmada River Sardar Sarovar Dam.

**(ii) At beginning what are the main aim of Narmada Bachao Andolan?**

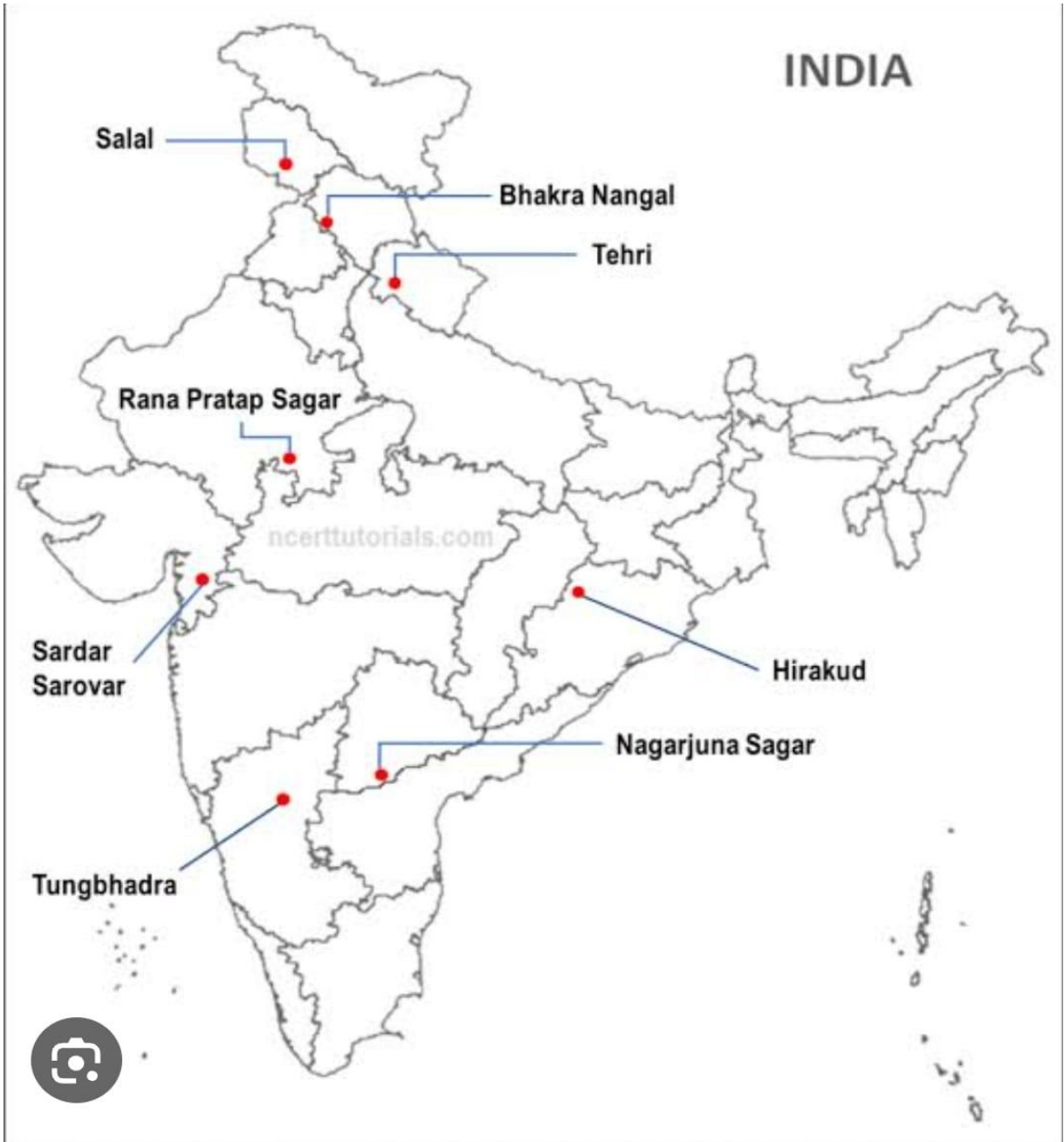
**ANS:** At beginning mean aim of Narmada Bachao Andolan is environmental issue related to trees that would be submerge under the dam water.

**(iii) Write some demerits of multipurpose projects.**

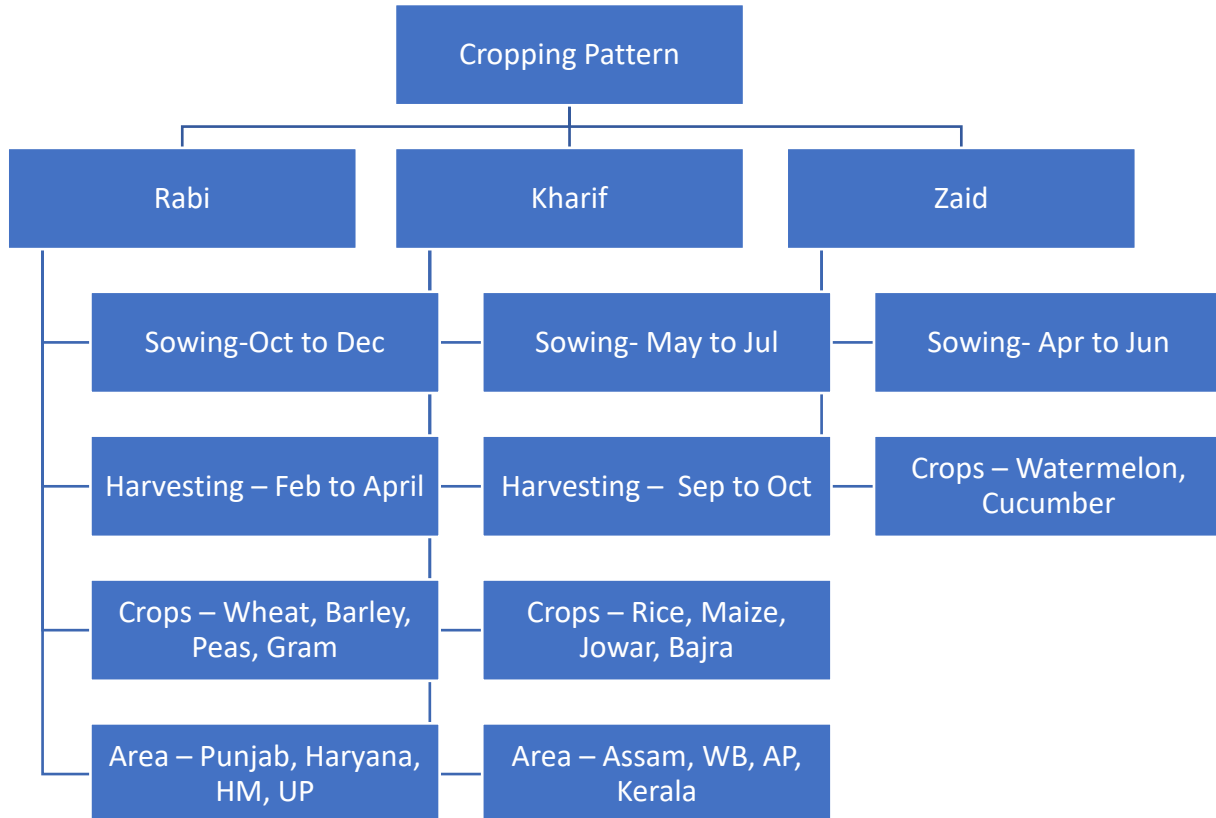
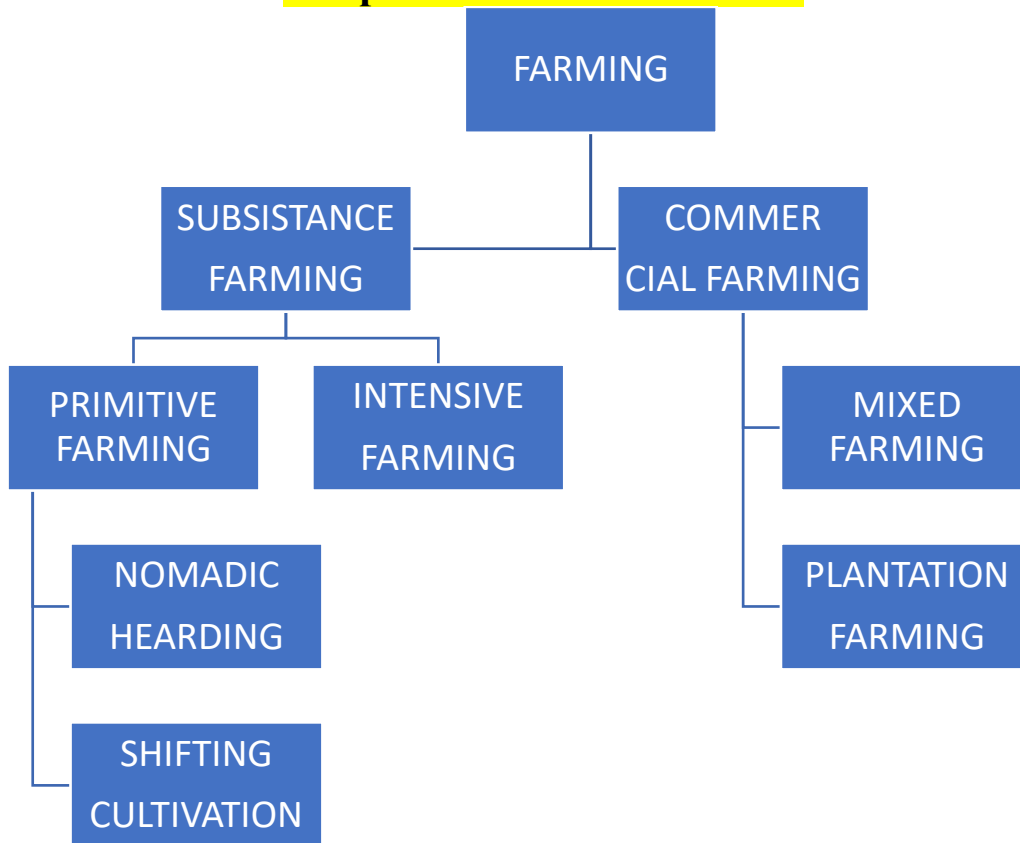
**ANS:** Some demerits of multipurpose projects like displacement of people, chances of flood, obstacles in the movement of aquatic life etc.

#### 43. Map question: on the outline map of India locate the dams.

- 1) Sala
- 2) Bhakra Nangal
- 3) Tehri
- 4) Rana Pratap Sagar
- 5) Sardar Sarovar
- 6) Tungabhadra
- 7) Nagarjuna Sagar
- 8) Hirakud



## Chapter 8. AGRICULTURE



## TYPES OF FARMING

### Subsistence farming

1. Primitive subsistence farming
2. Intensive Subsistence Farming

### Commercial farming

1. Mixed Farming
2. Plantation

- India has three cropping seasons — Rabi, Kharif and Zaid.

RABI	KHARIF	ZAID
Rabi crops are sown in winter from October to December and harvested in summer from April to June.	Kharif crops are grown with the onset of monsoon in different parts of the country and these are harvested in September-October.	In between the rabi and the kharif seasons, there is a short season during the summer months known as the Zaid season. e.g Watermelon

### • MAJOR CROPS

Name of the crop	Agricultural season/temperature and rainfall	Producing Area	Soil	Important features
RICE	kharif crop/100 cm, above 25°C	plains of north and north-eastern India, coastal areas and the deltaic regions, Punjab, Haryana and western Uttar Pradesh and parts of Rajasthan.	Alluvial	It is the staple food crop of a majority of the people in India. Our country is the second largest producer of rice in the world after China.
WHEAT	RABI CROP/BELOW 20°C, 50 to 75 cm of annual rainfall	The major wheat-producing states are Punjab, Haryana, Uttar Pradesh, Madhya Pradesh, Bihar and Rajasthan.	ALLUVIAL	This is the second most important cereal crop
Maize	It is a kharif crop which requires temperature between 21°C to 27°C and	Major maize-producing states are Karnataka, Madhya Pradesh, Uttar Pradesh, Bihar, Andhra Pradesh and Telangana	ALLUVIAL	It is a crop which is used both as food and fodder.

	grows well in old alluvial soil. <b>In some states like Bihar, maize is grown in rabi season also.</b>			
--	---	--	--	--

Millets: Jowar, bajra and ragi are the important millets grown in India. Though, these are known as coarse grains, they have very high nutritional value---  
Ragi is very rich in iron, calcium, other micro nutrients and roughage.  
Jowar is the third most important food crop with respect to area and production. Bajra grows well on sandy soils and shallow black soil.

Maize :It is used for both food and fodder.it is a kharif crop which requires temperature between 21 degree c to 27 degree C and grows well in alluvial soil'

- Food Crops other than grains

- ▶ Pulses: India is the largest producer as well as the consumer of pulses in the world. These are a major source of protein. Major pulses grown in India are tur, urad, moong, masur, peas and gram. Major pulses-producing states are Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Maharashtra and Karnataka.
- ▶ Sugarcane: It grows in hot and humid climate with a temperature of 21°C to 27°C and rainfall between 75-100 cm. India is the second largest producer of sugarcane after Brazil. The major sugarcane-producing states are UP, Maharashtra, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu, Andhra Pradesh, Bihar, Punjab and Haryana.
- ▶ Oil Seeds: India is the second largest producer of oilseeds in the world after China. Main oilseeds produced in India are groundnut, mustard, coconut, sesame, soyabean, castor seeds, cotton seeds, sunflower, etc. The major oilseed-producing states are Gujrat, Rajsthan and Andhra Pradesh. Linseed and mustard are rabi crops. Sesamum is a Kharif crop in north and rabi in South India. Castor seed is grown both as rabi and kharif crop.

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

**1. Which of the following is the most important occupation of the people of India?**

- a. Food gathering                      b. Agriculture                      c. Manufacturing                      d. Services

Ans: (b) Agriculture

**2. Which of the following types of economic activity is agriculture?**

- a. Primary activity                      b. Secondary activity                      c. Tertiary activity                      d. All of these

Ans: (a) Primary Activity

**3. Grouping of small land holding into a bigger one is called:**

- a. Ceiling of land holding                      b. Collectivisation  
c. Cooperative farming                      d. Consolidation of land holding

Ans: (d) Consolidation of land holding

**4. Which of the following right leads to the division of land among upcoming generations in India?**

- a. The right to property                      b. The right of inheritance  
c. The right of successor                      d. None of these

Ans: (b) The right of inheritance

**Q5. What is Primitive Subsistence Farming known as in North-Eastern states like Assam, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Nagaland?**

- a. Horticulture                      b. Penda                      c. Jhumming                      d. Milpa

Ans: (c) Jhumming

**6. Which of the following is a feature of primitive subsistence farming?**

- (i) It is practiced on small patches of land.
  - (ii) It is a slash and burn agriculture.
  - (iii) Farmer produces for the market.
  - (iv) Higher doses of chemical, fertilizers and insecticides are used to increase production.
- a. (i) and (ii)                      b. (ii) and (iii)                      c. (iii) and (iv)                      d. All of these

Ans: (a) (i) and (ii)

**7. Choose the correctly matched pair about the primitive cultivation in India from the following options:**

- a. Dahiya-Madhya Pradesh                      b. Kumari-Jharkhand
- c. Khil-Andhra Pradesh                      d. Koman - Karnataka

Ans: (a) Dahiya-Madhya Pradesh

**Q8. The 'slash and burn' agriculture is known in Mexico as:**

- a. Milpa                      b. Conuco                      c. Roca                      d. Masole

Ans: (a) Milpa

**9. Jhumming in Brazil is called:**

- a. Ladang                      b. Masole                      c. Roca                      d. None of these

Ans: (c) Roca.

**Q10. Which of the following types of farming is practiced in areas with high population pressure on land?**

- a. Primitive subsistence farming                      b. Intensive subsistence farming
- c. Commercial farming                      d. Plantations

Ans: (b) Intensive Subsistence Farming.

**11. Which one of the following describes a system of agriculture where a single crop is grown on a large area?**

- a. Shifting agriculture                      b. Plantation agriculture
- c. Horticulture                      d. Intensive agriculture

Ans: (b) Plantation Agriculture.

**12. Which of the following is not a feature of commercial farming?**

- a. Higher doses of modern inputs like HYV Seeds, chemical fertilizers, insecticides and pesticides are used to increase production
- b. It is used in areas of high population
- c. Plantation is also a type of commercial agriculture.
- d. Most of the production is sold in the market

Ans: (b) It is used in areas of high population.

**13. In states like \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.**

Three crops of paddy are grown in a year.

- a. Punjab, Haryana, Assam
- b. Assam, West Bengal, Odisha
- c. Assam, Odisha, Punjab
- d. Assam, Andhra Pradesh, Punjab

Ans: (d) Assam, Andhra Pradesh, Punjab

**14. Which of the following is not true with reference to the climate condition required for the cultivation of rice?**

- a. It requires high temperature ie., above
- b. It requires high humidity
- c. It requires annual rainfall 100 cm
- d. It requires 210 frost free day.

Ans: (d) It requires 210 frost free day.

**Q15. Which of the following factors have promoted the growth of rice in areas of less rainfall such as Punjab, Haryana and Western Uttar Pradesh?**

- (i) Development of dense network canal irrigation
- (ii) Use of modern inputs like fertilizers, pesticides etc.
- (iii) Heavy rain fall.

(iv) Availability of loans.

- a. (i) and (ii)                      b. (ii) and (iii)                      c. (iii) and (iv)                      d. All of these

Ans: (a) (i) and (ii)

**16. Which of the following is true with reference to climatic conditions required for the growth of wheat?**

- (i) It requires a cool growing season.  
(ii) It requires bright sun shine at the time of ripening.  
(iii) It requires more than 100 cm of annual rainfall.  
(iv) It can be grown in all parts of India.

- a. (i) and (ii)                      b. (ii) and (iii)                      c. (iii) and (iv)                      d. All of these

Ans: (a) (i) and (ii)

**17. In which months the Kharif crops are harvested?**

- a. April-June                      b. September-October                      c. January-February                      d. June-July

Ans: (b) September-October

**Q 18. Read the information and answer the question. It is an important beverage crop introduced in India by the British. It requires warm and moist frost-free climate all through the year. It grows well in tropical and sub-tropical climates.**

- a. Tea                      b. Cotton                      c. Sugarcane                      d. Jute

Ans: (a) Tea

**19. Choose the correctly matched pair about the crops and the areas they are grown in**

- a. Groundnut-Assam                      b. Tea-Gujarat                      c. Coffee-Karnataka                      d. Sugarcane-Chhattisgarh

Ans: (c) Coffee-Karnataka

**20. Bajra grows well on:**

- a. alluvial and loamy soils                      b. alluvial and sandy soils  
c. sandy soils and shallow black soil                      d. alluvial and clayey soils

Ans: (c) sandy soils and shallow black soil

## VERY SHORT ANSWERS TYPE QUESTIONS

(2 MARKS)

**21. What is 'slash and burn' cultivation?**

Ans: In this form of cultivation, farmers clear a patch of land by burning the vegetation. They produce cereals and other food crops to sustain their family. When the soil fertility decreases, the farmers shift and clear a fresh patch for cultivation.

**22. Why jhumming is a primitive subsistence farming in India?**

Ans. Jhumming is practiced in hilly areas of North-Eastern states with the use of primitive tools and it is for self-consumption only. So, it is a primitive subsistence farming in India.

**23. Hoe, dao, digging sticks are associated with which type of farming?**

Ans. Hoe, dao and digging sticks tools are associated with primitive subsistence farming.

**24. What is commercial farming?**

Ans. Farming undertaken with an objective to earn profits from agriculture by using modern technology is referred to as commercial farming.

**25. Mention two factors that are important for the growth of plantations.**

Ans. The two factors are:

- (i) Well-developed system of transport and communication that connects the plantation to the factories.  
(ii) Well-developed markets.

**26. What is the sowing period of rabi crops?**

Ans. Rabi crops are sown at the start of winter season in the months of October to December and harvested in summer from April to June.

**27. Explain briefly the pattern of paddy crops in Odisha and West Bengal.**

Ans. Paddy is mostly a kharif crop in West Bengal and Odisha. Three crops of paddy are also grown in a year and are known as Aus, Aman and Boro.

**28. Name a crop that is commercial crop in Punjab, but subsistence in Odisha.**

Ans. Rice is a commercial crop in Punjab as it is grown in huge quantities for commercial purposes, but in Odisha, farmers grow mostly for self-consumption.



**29. Write the amount of annual rainfall required for the cultivation of wheat.**

Ans. The amount of annual rainfall required for the cultivation of wheat is 50-75 cm.

### SHORT TYPE QUESTIONS

(3 MARKS)

**30. Describe any three main features of 'Kharif crop season'!**

Ans. The main features of 'Kharif crop season' are:

- (i) Kharif crops are grown with the onset of monsoon in different parts of the country and are harvested in September to October.
- (ii) Kharif crops require high rainfall or better irrigation facilities.
- (iii) These crops are grown in all regions of the country and the major crops are paddy, maize, jowar, bajra, cotton, jute, groundnut, etc.

Months and types of crops are confused with Rabi crops.

**31. Describe any three main features of 'Rabi crop season'.**

Ans. The main features of 'Rabi crop season' are:

- (i) Rabi crops are sown in winter season from October to December and are harvested in summer from April to June.
- (ii) Availability of precipitation during winter months due to Western temperate cyclones helps in the success of these crops.

**32. What type of climate is required for the cultivation of wheat? Name any four important wheat-producing states of India.**

Ans. Cultivation of wheat requires the following:

- (i) Cool and moist weather during growth and warm and dry climate during ripening is needed.
- (ii) 50-75 cm rainfall is required. Rainfall is necessary and beneficial.
- (iii) A few light winter showers or assured irrigation ensures a bumper harvest.

Punjab, Haryana, Western Uttar Pradesh and Madhya Pradesh are the main wheat producing states of India.

**33. Explain any two geographical conditions required for the cultivation of pulses. Name any two important pulse-producing states.**

Ans. Geographical conditions required for the cultivation of pulses are as following:

- (i) Temperature is required ranging from 25°C to 30°C.
- (ii) They grow well in the areas of 50-75 cm rainfall:

Madhya Pradesh and Uttar Pradesh are two important pulse-producing states.

**34. Which crop is known as the 'golden fibre'? Explain two geographical conditions essential for the cultivation of this crop. Mention any four uses.**

Ans. Jute is known as 'golden fibre' Two geographical Conditions essential for cultivation of jute are as follows:

- (1) Jute grows well in a temperature of 25°C.
- (2) 150-200 cm rainfall is essential for the cultivation of jute.

It is used to manufacture:

- (i) gunny bags
- (ii) mats
- (iii) ropes
- (iv) carpets.

**35. Name one important beverage crop and specify the india's geographical conditions required for its growth.**

Ans. Tea is an important beverage crop. Conditions required for its growth are as follows:

- (i) It grows in tropical and sub-tropical climates endowed with deep and fertile well-drained soil rich in humus and organic matter.

**36. What are millets? Give brief description of the climatic conditions and producing states of the millets grown in India.**

Ans. Millets are coarse grains having high nutritional value. The important millets grown in India are jowar, bajra and ragi. Ragi is very rich in iron, calcium, other micro-nutrients and roughage.

The climatic conditions and producing states of these millets are given as:

- (i) Jowar: It is a rain-fed crop mostly grown in a moist area. States producing jowar are Maharashtra, Karnataka and Madhya Pradesh.

- (ii) Bajra: It grows in dry and warm climate on sandy soils and shallow black soil. The states producing bajra are Rajasthan, Maharashtra, Gujarat, Haryana and Uttar Pradesh.
- (iii) Ragi: It grows well in the dry region on red, black sandy and loamy soils. The states producing ragi are Tamil Nadu, Himachal Pradesh, Uttarakhand and Sikkim.

**37. Explain briefly the features of intensive subsistence farming in India.**

Ans. Intensive subsistence of farming is practiced in areas of high population pressure on land. The following are its important features:

- (i) It is a labour-intensive farming where high doses of biochemical inputs and irrigation are used for obtaining higher production.
- (ii) HYV seeds and modern inputs are used to increase production.
- (iii) This type of farming is practiced in areas of high population on land.
- (iv) More than one crop is cultivated during a year.

**LONG ANSWERS TYPE QUESTIONS**

**(5 MARKS)**

**38. Name the two major fibre crops grown in India. Describe the conditions required for the growth of these two crops with their growing areas.**

Ans. The major fibre crops grown in India are Cotton, Jute, Hemp, Natural silk. (Any two)

The conditions required for the growth of these crops are as follows:

- (i) Cotton: It grows well in drier parts of the black cotton soil of Deccan Plateau. It requires high temperature, light rainfall or irrigation, 210 frost-free days and bright sunshine for its growth. The leading cotton producing states are Gujarat, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Punjab, Haryana, Karnataka, Tamil Nadu and Madhya Pradesh.
- (ii) Jute: Jute grows well on well-drained fertile soil in flood plains where soil is renewed every year.

**39. Explain any five technological and institutional reforms in the Indian agriculture.**

Ans. The Government of India has introduced various technological and institutional reforms to improve agriculture in 1980s and 1990s. These reforms led to Green Revolution in the country.

The technological reforms which led to Green Revolution are as follows:

- (i) Several schemes for irrigation were undertaken and arid and semi-arid areas were brought under cultivation.
- (ii) The development of HYV seeds of wheat in the early 60s and those of rice in the 70s laid the foundation of Green Revolution in India.
- (iii) Special weather bulletins and agricultural programmes for farmers were introduced on radio and television.

The institutional reforms which led to Green Revolution are as follows:

- (i) Crop Insurance Scheme was launched by the government to protect the farmers against losses caused by crop failure on account of natural calamities like drought, flood, hailstorm, cyclone, fire, etc.
- (ii) Collectivisation, consolidation of holdings, abolition of the Zamindari system, etc., were given top priority to bring about institutional reforms in the country after independence.
- (iii) Grameen banks, cooperative societies and banks were established for providing loan facilities to the farmers at lower rates of interest
- (iv) The government announced Minimum Support Price, remunerative and procurement prices to reduce exploitation

**40. What is the importance of pulses in our country? Why are pulses grown as rotation crop? Name two major pulse producing states of India.**

Ans. India is the largest producer and consumer of pulses in the world. They are the main source of protein in a vegetarian diet. Pulses need less moisture and survive in dry climate. Pulses are leguminous and all the crops, except arhar, help in restoring soil fertility by fixing nitrogen from the air. Since they make the soil fertile, they are grown in rotation with other crops. Major pulses producing states in India are Maharashtra, Madhya Pradesh, Rajasthan, Uttar Pradesh.

**SOURCE BASED QUESTIONS**

**(4 MARKS)**

**41. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

This type of farming is still practiced in few pockets of India. Primitive subsistence agriculture is practiced on small patches of land with the help of primitive tools like hoe, dao and digging sticks and family/community labour. This type of farming depends upon monsoon, natural fertility of the soil and suitability of other environmental conditions to the crops grown.

It is a 'slash and burn' agriculture. Farmers clear a patch of land and produce cereals and other food crops to sustain their family. When the soil fertility decreases, the farmers shift and clear a fresh patch of land for cultivation. This type of shifting allows nature to replenish the fertility of the soil through natural processes; land productivity in this type of agriculture is low as the farmer does not use fertilizers or other modern inputs. It is known by different names in different parts of the country.

It is Jhumming in North-Eastern states like Assam, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Nagaland; Pamlou in Manipur, Dipa in Bastar district of Chhattisgarh, and in Andaman and Nicobar Islands.

**(i) Upon which factors primitive subsistence agriculture depend?**

Ans. Primitive subsistence agriculture depends upon monsoon, natural fertility of soil and suitability other environmental conditions to the crops grown.

**(ii) In which states of India, primitive subsistence farming is known as 'Jhumming'?**

Ans. Primitive subsistence farming is known 'Jhumming' in North-Eastern states like Assam, Meghalaya, Mizoram and Nagaland.

**(iii) Why do farmers shift and clear a fresh patch of land for cultivation?**

Ans. Farmers shift and clear a fresh patch of land for cultivation when the soil fertility decreases. This allows to replenish the soil fertility through natural processes.

**MAP SKILL**

Identify the major and minor areas of Wheat in the political map of India



## Chapter 9. MINERALS AND ENERGY RESOURCES

### Energy Resources

- Resources which are used as power to run industries are called energy resources.

Example: Fuel minerals like coal, petroleum, natural gas, uranium and electricity.

Energy resources can be classified into conventional and non-conventional sources.

Conventional: It includes firewood, cattle dung cake, coal, petroleum, natural gas and electricity.

Non-conventional: It includes solar, wind, tidal, geothermal, biogas and atomic energy. They are inexhaustible and renewable.

### Coal

- Coal is a fossil fuel
- It is used for power generation in thermal power plants.
- It is bulky. So many coal based industries are located near coalfields.
- Coal is formed due the compression of plant material over millions of years.

### Types of Coal

- Peat: It has a low carbon and high moisture contents and low heating capacity.
- Lignite: It is a low grade brown coal, which is soft with high moisture content. Major lignite reserves are in Neyveli in Tamil Nadu and are used for generation of electricity.
- Bituminous: It is has been buried deep and subjected to increased temperatures  
It is the most popular coal in commercial use.  
High grade bituminous coal is used for smelting iron in blast furnaces
- Anthracite: It is the highest quality hard coal.
  
- Major Coalfields: Damodar valley (West Bengal-Jharkhand) The Godavari, Mahanadi, Son, and Wardha valley, Jharia, Raniganj, Bokaro, Karanpura, Chandrapura, Giridih, Deogargh, Korba, Singrauli, Talcher are important coalfields.

### Petroleum

- Petroleum is also known as mineral oil or liquid gold.
- It is the second energy source in India after coal.
- It provides fuel for heating and lighting
- It provides lubricants for machinery
- It provides raw materials for a number of manufacturing industries
- Petroleum refineries act as a “nodal industry” for synthetic textile, fertilizer industries and chemical industries.
- In India most of the petroleum occurrences are associated with anticlines and fault traps in the rock formations of the tertiary age.
- 63 % of India’s petroleum production is from Mumbai High
- 18 % from Gujarat and 16 % from Assam
- Major oil fields of India are :

Mumbai High	- Maharashtra
Ankeleshwar	- Gujarat
Digboi,	- Assam
Naharkatiya	- Assam
Moran-Hugrijan	- Assam

### Natural Gas

- It is a clean energy resource
- It is environment friendly fuel because of its low carbon dioxide emissions
- It is also used as a raw material in petrochemical industry
- Use of CNG for vehicles is gaining wide popularity in the country.

**Reserves of natural gas:** Krishna - Godavari Basin  
Mumbai High - Gulf of Cambay  
Andaman and Nicobar islands

### **Major Gas Pipeline:**

- Hazira-Vijaipur – Jagdishpur (HVJ) pipelines cross country gas pipeline links Mumbai High and Bassien with the fertilizer, power and industrial complexes in western and northern India.

### **Electricity**

- In today's life electricity is used for many purposes.
- Its per capita consumption is considered as an index of development.
- Electricity is generated mainly in two ways: by running water which drives hydro turbines to generate hydro electricity

### **Example: Bhakra Nangal, Damodar Valley Corporation, the Kopili Hydel Project etc.**

- By burning fuels such as coal, petroleum and natural gas to drive turbines to produce thermal power.
- Example: Singrauli, Namrup, Ramagundam, Talcher, Neyveli, etc.

### **Non-Conventional Sources of Energy**

- **Why should we promote the use of renewable or non-conventional source of energy?**
- Shortages of fossil fuels have raised uncertainties about the security of energy supply in future.
- Rising prices of oil and gas has raised uncertainty.
- Increasing use of fossil fuels also causes serious environmental problems.

### **Nuclear or Atomic Energy**

- It is obtained by altering the structure of atoms.
- When alteration is made, much energy is released in the form of heat and this heat is used to generate electric power.
- Uranium and Thorium are used as fuel which are available in Jharkhand and the Aravalli ranges of Rajasthan.
- Monazite sands of Kerala is also rich in Thorium.
- Major Nuclear Power Stations of India are: Kalpakkam, Kaiga, Kakrapara, Kudamkulam, Rawat Bhata, Narora & Tarapore.

### **Solar Energy**

- By using photovoltaic technology solar energy is converted into electricity
- India is a tropical country. There is enormous possibilities of tapping solar energy
- It has minimised the dependence of rural households on firewood and dung cakes
- It contributes to environmental conservation and adequate supply of manure in agriculture
- India's largest solar power plant is located in Madhapur near Bhuj in Gujarat.

### **Wind Power**

- Wind energy is utilised to turn huge windmills to generate electricity.
- India has great potential of wind power.
- The largest wind farm cluster is in Tamil Nadu from Nagarcoil to Madurai.
- Other important wind farms are in Andhra Pradesh, Karnataka, Gujarat, Kerala, Maharashtra and Lakshadweep.

**Nagarcoil and Jaisalmer are well known for effective use of wind energy.**

### **Biogas**

- Biogas is produced by the decomposition of organic matters like shrubs, farm waste, animal and human waste.
- Biogas has higher thermal efficiency in comparison to kerosene or charcoal.
- It is mainly used for domestic consumption in rural areas.
- The plants using cattle dung are known as ‘Gobar gas plants’.
- It provides twin benefits to the farmer in the form of energy and manure.
- It also prevents the loss of trees due to the burning of fuel wood.

### **Tidal Energy**

- **What is tidal energy?**
- Tidal energy is the energy generated by the movement of oceanic tides.
- Do you know how tidal energy is generated?
- During high tide when water flows into the inlet and gets trapped then the gate is closed. After the tide falls outside, the water retained by the floodgate flows back to the sea through a pipe that is fitted with a power-generating turbine. Thus electricity is generated.

**Tidal Energy Generating Centers:** Gulf of Khambhat in Gujarat, Gulf of Kachchh in Gujarat  
Gangetic delta in Sunderban regions of West Bengal

### **Geo Thermal Energy**

- It refers to the heat and electricity produced by using the heat from the interior of the Earth.
- How Geo Thermal Energy is generated?
- The Earth grows progressively hotter with increasing depth. Groundwater in such areas absorbs heat from the rocks and becomes hot. When it rises to the earth’s surface in the form of hot spring, it turns into steam. This steam is used to drive turbines and thus electricity is generated.

**Areas of Geo Thermal Energy generation in India:**

Parvati valley near Manikarn in Himachal Pradesh, Puga Valley, Ladakh

### **Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)**

**1) Gold, silver and platinum are examples of \_\_\_\_\_.**

- a) Ferrous minerals
- b) Non-ferrous minerals
- c) Precious minerals
- d) Non-metallic minerals

**Answer: (c) Precious minerals**

**2) Cobalt is an example of \_\_\_\_\_.**

- a) Ferrous minerals
- b) Non-ferrous minerals
- c) Energy minerals
- d) Non-metallic minerals

**Answer: (a) Ferrous minerals**

**3) Sandstone and mica are examples of \_\_\_\_\_.**

- a) Non-metallic minerals
- b) Energy minerals
- c) Non-ferrous minerals
- d) Ferrous minerals

**Answer: (a) Non-metallic minerals**

**4) Coal and natural gas are examples of \_\_\_\_\_ minerals.**

- a) Non-metallic
- b) Energy
- c) Ferrous
- d) Non-ferrous

**Answer: (b) Energy**

**5) \_\_\_\_\_ provides a strong base for the development of metallurgical industries.**

- a) Ferrous minerals
- b) Non-ferrous minerals
- c) Energy minerals
- d) Precious minerals

**Answer: (a) Ferrous minerals**

6) Coal mining in Jowai and Cherapunjee is done by family members in the form of a long narrow tunnel, known as \_\_\_\_\_ mining.

- a) Rathole                      b) Opencast mining                      c) Underground mining                      d) None of the above

Answer: (a) Rathole

7) Fill in the blank by choosing the most appropriate option:

Uranium and Thorium used for generating nuclear power are found in

- (a) Ganga Basin    (b) Gulf of Khambhat and Cambay  
(c) Manikarn in Himachal Pradesh                      (d) Aravalli ranges of Rajasthan

Ans. (d) Aravalli ranges of Rajasthan

8) Magnetite is the finest iron ore with a very high content of iron up to \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) 70 per cent                      b) 50 per cent                      c) 40 per cent                      d) 30 per cent

Answer: (a) 70 per cent

9) Durg-Bastar-Chandrapur belt lies in \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) Rajasthan and Uttar Pradesh                      b) Chhattisgarh and Maharashtra  
(c) Gujarat and Madhya Pradesh                      d) Madhya Pradesh and Odisha

Answer: (b) Chhattisgarh and Maharashtra

10) Ballari-Chitradurga-Chikkamagaluru-Tumakuru belt in Karnataka has large reserves of \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) Iron ore                      b) Copper                      c) Uranium                      d) Granite

Answer: (a) Iron ore

11) \_\_\_\_\_ is the largest producer of manganese ores in India.

- a) Jharkhand                      b) Odisha                      c) Madhya Pradesh                      d) West Bengal

Answer: (b) Odisha

12) In which of the following locations are mica deposits not found?

- a) Ajmer                      b) Beawar                      c) Hazaribagh                      d) Katni

Answer: (d) Katni

13) Koraput has rich deposits of \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) Mica                      b) Bauxite                      c) Iron ore                      d) Manganese

Answer: (b) Bauxite

14) Which one of the following is the non conventional sources of energy is harnessed near Manikam in Himachal Pradesh.

- (a) Geothermal Energy    (b) Wind energy  
(c) Solar energy    (d) Hydel Energy

Ans. (a) Geothermal Energy

15) Which one of the following is the largest producer of copper in India?

- (a) Karnataka                      (b) Gujarat                      (c) Orissa                      (d) Rajasthan

Ans: (d) Rajasthan

16) Which of the following states have most of the petroleum deposits?

- (a) Rajasthan and Kerala    (b) Assam and Gujarat  
(c) Gujarat and Goa    (d) Odisha and Punjab

Ans: (b) Assam and Gujarat

In each of the following questions, a statement of Assertion (A) is given followed by a corresponding statement of Reason (R). Select the correct answer to codes (a), (b), (c) or (d) as given below.

(a) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is the correct explanation of Assertion.

(b) Both Assertion and Reason are correct and Reason is not the correct explanation of Assertion.

(c) Assertion is correct but Reason is wrong.

(d) Assertion is wrong but Reason is correct.

17) Assertion (A): Biogas is the most efficient use of cattle dung. It reduces the quality

Reason (R): It reduces the quality of manure.

Ans: (c) (A) is correct but (R) is wrong

18) Assertion (A): Promotion of energy conservation and increased use of renewable energy sources are the twin planks of sustainable energy.

Reason (R): It is necessary to develop a sustainable path of energy development.

Ans: (c) (A) is correct but (R) is wrong.

19) Assertion (A): Oceanic tides cannot be used to generate electricity.

Reason (R): Tidal energy can be used to run turbines and thereafter generate electricity.

Ans: (d) (A) is wrong but (R) is correct

20) Assertion (A): Groundwater absorbs heat from the rocks and becomes hot.

Reason (R): Geothermal energy exists because the Earth grows progressively hotter with increasing depth. This heat warms the water.

Ans. (a) Both (A) and (R) are true and (R) is the correct explanation of (A)

### Very Short Answer Type Questions [ 2 Marks]

**21. Why is there a wide range of colours, hardness, crystal forms, lustre and density found in minerals?**

**Ans:** A wide range of colours, hardness, crystal forms, lustre and density is found in minerals because a particular mineral is formed from a certain combination of elements and depends upon the physical and chemical conditions under which the material forms.

**22. How do minerals occur in igneous and metamorphic rocks?**

**Ans:** In igneous and metamorphic rocks minerals occur in the cracks, crevices, faults or joints. The smaller occurrences are called veins and the larger ones are called lodes.

**23. How do minerals occur in sedimentary rocks?**

**Ans:** In sedimentary rocks, minerals occur in beds or layers. They are deposited in horizontal stratas.

**24. How are gobar gas plants beneficial to the farmers?**

**Ans:** Gobar gas plants are beneficial to the farmers because they provide energy and improved quality of manure.

**25. Why does aluminum metal have great importance?**

**Ans:** Aluminium metal has great importance because it combines the strength of metals such as iron, with extreme lightness and also with good conductivity and great malleability. It can be used as a substitute for steel.

**26. How is iron ore transported from Kudremukh mines to a port near Mangalore?**

**Ans:** From Kudremukh mines to a port near Mangalore, the iron ore is transported as slurry through a pipeline.

**27. What is Rat hole mining?**

**Ans:** Rat Hole Mining is a process that involves digging very small tunnels, usually about 3-4 feet deep, in which workers, more often children, enter and extract coal. Meghalaya predominantly engages in rat hole mining because of the difficult terrain and nature of coal available in this region

### Short Answer Type Questions

[3 Marks]

**28. 'Consumption of energy in all forms has been rising all over the country. There is an urgent need to develop a sustainable path of energy development and energy saving.' Suggest and explain any three measures to solve this burning problem.**

**Ans:** The following are the measures to solve this burning problem.

- We should use public transport instead of personal vehicles as much as possible.
- We should switch off electricity when not in use.
- We should switch to power-saving devices.
- We should keep our power equipment well maintained.
- Above all, use of non-conventional sources of energy would be of great help in overcoming the problem.

**29. 'There is a pressing need to use renewable energy resources.' Justify the statement with suitable arguments.**

**Ans:** The given statement can be justified by the following arguments.



- Increased consumption of energy resources has increased our dependence on fossil fuels like coal, oil and gas.
- There are uncertainties about the energy supplies in future because of their potential shortages.
- Use of non-renewable sources have serious consequences on the growth of national economy as they are getting expensive day by day.
- Above all, non-renewable sources pose a great threat in the form of pollution and other environmental issues.
- Solar, wind, tide, biomass and energy from waste material can thus, be proved advantageous in long run.

**30. How is the mining activity injurious to the health of the miners and environment? Explain.**

Ans: Mining activity is injurious to the health of miners due to the following reasons.

- Inhalation of poisonous gases and dust make them vulnerable to pulmonary diseases.
- The risk of collapse of mine roofs may risk the life of miners.
- Inundation and fires in coalmines are a constant threat to the miners.

**31. In the present day energy crisis, what steps will you like to take for saving energy?**

Ans: We can save the energy by the following ways.

- Switching off the electrical appliances when not in use
- Use of energy efficient devices like CFL bulbs and appliances
- Car-pooling or use of public transport instead of private vehicles
- Use of alternate sources of energy (non-conventional/renewable sources)

**32. How can solar energy solve the energy problem to some extent in India? Give your opinion.**

Ans: Solar energy can solve the energy problem in India to some extent in the following ways:

- 1) India is a tropical country and it has enormous possibilities of tapping solar energy.
- 2) It is the cleanest form of energy available free of cost.
- 3) It minimises dependence of rural households on firewood and dung cakes.

### Long Answer Type Questions

[5 Marks]

**33. Highlight the importance of petroleum. Explain the occurrence of petroleum in India.**

Ans: The importance of petroleum is as follows:

- It provides fuel for heating and lighting.
  - It provides lubricants for machinery and raw materials for many manufacturing industries.
  - Petroleum refineries act as a 'nodal industry' for synthetic textiles, fertiliser and chemical industries.
- (Any two)

The occurrence of petroleum in India:

- Most of the petroleum in India is found in anticlines and fault traps in the rock formations of the tertiary age.
- In regions of folding, anticlines or domes, it occurs where oil is trapped in the crest of the upfold.
- The oil-bearing layer is porous limestone or sandstone through which oil may flow. The oil is prevented from sinking or rising by intervening non-porous layers.

**34. Explain the importance of conservation of minerals. Highlight any three measures to conserve them.**

Ans: Minerals conservation is essential because:

- Minerals are non-renewable or finite in nature.
- The rate of formation of minerals is very slow in comparison to the rate of consumption. The geological processes of mineral formation takes place over millions of years.
- They are valuable and short-lived possessions of a country. Continued extraction leads to increasing costs as they are taken from greater depths along with decrease in quality.

The following are the three methods of conserving minerals.

- Minerals have to be used in a planned and sustainable manner.
- Improved technologies should be evolved to make use of low grade ores at low costs.
- Recycling of metals, using scrap metals and other substitutes would help in the conservation of minerals.
- Using better mining methods will also help to reduce wastage.

**35. 'Minerals are indispensable part of our lives.' Support the statement with examples.**

Answer: Minerals are indispensable part of our lives. The statement can be supported giving the following examples.

- Almost everything we use, from a tiny pin to a towering building or a big ship, all are made from minerals. The railways lines and the tarmac (paving) of the roads, our implements and machinery too are made of minerals.
- Cars, buses, trains, aeroplanes manufactured from minerals are run by power resources derived from the earth.
- Even the food we eat contains minerals. Although our minerals intake represents only about 0.3% of our total intake of nutrients, they are so potent and so important that without them we would not be able to utilise the other 99.7% of foodstuffs.
- Human beings have used minerals for their livelihood, decoration, festivities, religious and ceremonial sites. In short, all living things need minerals. Life processes cannot occur without minerals.
- Minerals like coal, petroleum, etc. are important sources of industrial and domestic energy. It is because of these energy resources that the wheel of development is moving.

**36. Differentiate between Thermal Energy and Hydroelectricity.**

Ans: Thermal energy is a conventional source of energy whereas Hydroelectricity is a non-conventional source of energy. They both produced electricity with different mediums.

Thermal Energy	Hydroelectricity
Thermal energy is produced by burning coal, petroleum and Natural gas.	Hydroelectricity is produced by fast flowing water with the help of turbines.
It uses non-renewable resources to generate electricity.	It uses renewable resources to generate electricity.
It causes pollution.	It doesn't cause pollution.
It is expensive in the long run.	It is cheaper in the long run.
High maintenance and repair cost	Less maintenance and repair cost

**37. Differentiate between Conventional and Non -Conventional sources of energy.**

Ans: The differences between conventional and non-conventional energy sources are as follows-

Conventional sources of energy	Non-conventional sources of energy
Fossil fuel, CNG, coal, oil, natural gas are the examples of the conventional sources of energy.	Solar Energy, Wind Energy, Bio Energy, Hydro Energy, Tidal Energy, Ocean Energy are the examples of non-conventional energy resources.
The conventional sources of energy are non-renewable by any natural process.	Non-conventional energy resources are renewable.
These resources are available in a limited quantity.	Non-conventional energy sources are eco-friendly in nature.
Conventional resources can also be classified as commercial and non-commercial energy resources.	Non-conventional energy sources do not increase pollution.

The main difference between conventional and non-conventional sources of energy is that the former is non-renewable and the later is renewable.

**CASE STUDY QUESTION (3X4)**

**38. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:**

India is fortunate to have fairly rich and varied mineral resources. However, these are unevenly distributed. Broadly speaking, peninsular rocks contain most of the reserves of coal, metallic minerals, mica and many other non-metallic minerals. Sedimentary rocks on the western and eastern flanks of the peninsula, in Gujarat and Assam have most of the petroleum deposits. Rajasthan with the rock systems of the peninsula has reserves of many non-ferrous minerals. The vast alluvial plains of north India are almost devoid of economic minerals

**(i) Which minerals peninsular rocks contain?**

Ans: Peninsular rocks contain most of the reserves of coal, metallic minerals, mica and many other non-metallic minerals.

**(ii) Which states in India have the largest petroleum reserves?**

Ans: Gujarat and Assam have the largest petroleum reserves.

**(iii) Give reasons for the variations in the existence of minerals in India.**

Ans: Variations in the existence of minerals in India exist largely because of the differences in the geological structure, processes and time involved in the formation of minerals.

**39. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:**

Energy is required for all activities. It is needed to cook, to provide light and heat, to propel vehicles and to drive machinery in industries. Energy can be generated from fuel minerals like coal, petroleum, natural gas, uranium and from electricity. Energy resources can be classified as conventional and non-conventional sources. Conventional sources include: firewood, cattle dung cake, coal, petroleum, natural gas and electricity (both hydel and thermal).

non-conventional sources include solar, wind, tidal, geothermal, biogas and atomic energy. Firewood and cattle dung cake are most common in rural India. According to one estimate more than 70 percent energy requirement in rural households is met by these two; continuation of these is increasingly becoming difficult due to decreasing forest area. Moreover, using dung cake too is being discouraged because it consumes most valuable manure which could be used in agriculture.

**(i) why dung cake is discouraged in rural area?**

Ans- its discouraged because it consumes most valuable manure which could be used in agriculture

**(ii) What are the two most common energy resource used in rural area?**

Ans.- Firewood and cattle dung cake are most common in rural India

**(iii) Classify conventional and non-conventional sources of energy?**

Ans-. Energy resources can be classified as conventional and non-conventional sources.

**Conventional sources** include: firewood, cattle dung cake, coal, petroleum, natural gas and electricity (both hydel and thermal).

**Non-conventional sources** include Firewood and cattle dung cake, solar, wind, tidal, geothermal, biogas and atomic energy.

**40. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:**

In India, coal is the most abundantly available fossil fuel. It provides a substantial part of the nation's energy needs. It is used for power generation, to supply energy to industry as well as for domestic needs. India is highly dependent on coal for meeting its commercial energy requirements. As you are already aware that coal is formed due the compression of plant material over millions of years. Coal, therefore, is found in a variety of forms depending on the degrees of compression and the depth and time of burial.

**(i) Name the four varieties of coal found in India.**

Ans: Peat, Lignite, Bituminous and Anthracite.

**(ii) What are the geographical ages in which coal is found in India?**

Ans: In India coal occurs in rock series of two men geological ages, namely Gondwana, a little over 200 million years in age and in tertiary deposits which are only about 55 million years old.

**(iii) Where are the major coal deposits found in India?**

Ans: The major resources of Gondwana coal, which are metallurgical coal, are located in Damodar Valley (West Bengal and Jharkhand).

Jharia, Raniganj, Bokaro are important coalfields, The Godavari, Mahanadi, Son and Wardha valleys also contain coal deposits,

**41. Read the sources given below and answer the questions that follow:**

Minerals are an indispensable part of our lives. Almost everything we use, from a tiny pin to a towering building or a big ship, all are made from minerals. The railway lines and the tarmac (paving) of the roads, our implements and machinery too are made from minerals. Cars, buses, trains, aeroplanes are manufactured from minerals and run on power resources derived from the earth. Even the food that we eat contains minerals. In all stages of development, human beings have used minerals for their livelihood, decoration, festivities, religious and ceremonial rites.

(i) What are minerals?

Ans: Minerals are an indispensable part of our lives. Almost everything we use, from a tiny pin to a towering building or a big ship, all are made from minerals.

(ii) What is the importance of minerals in our lives?

Ans: Minerals are an indispensable part of our lives, from a tiny pin to a towering building or a big ship, all are made from minerals.

The railway lines and the tarmac (paving) of the roads, our implements and machinery too are made from minerals. Cars, buses, trains, aeroplanes are manufactured from minerals and run on power resources derived from the earth.

Even the food that we eat contains minerals.

(iii) Name one hardest and softest minerals.

Ans: One hardest mineral - Diamond

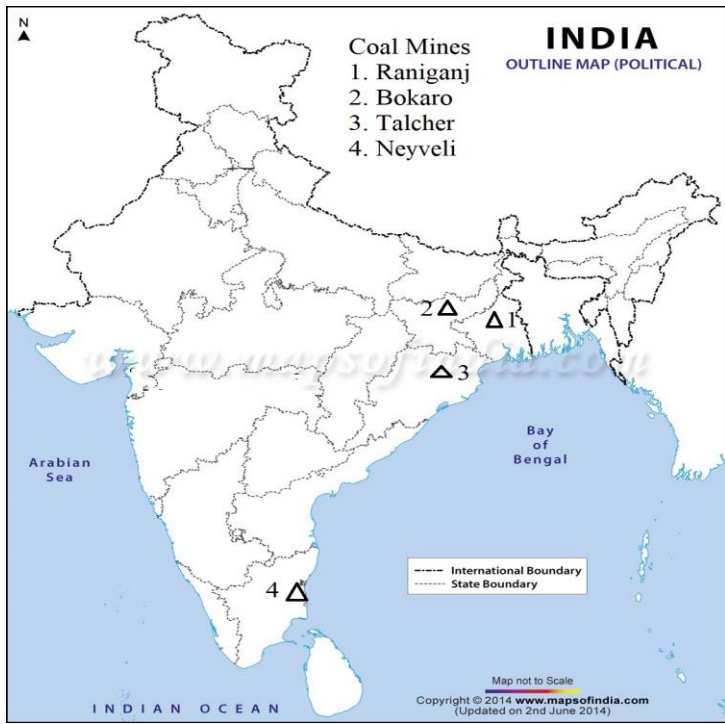
One softest mineral – Talc.

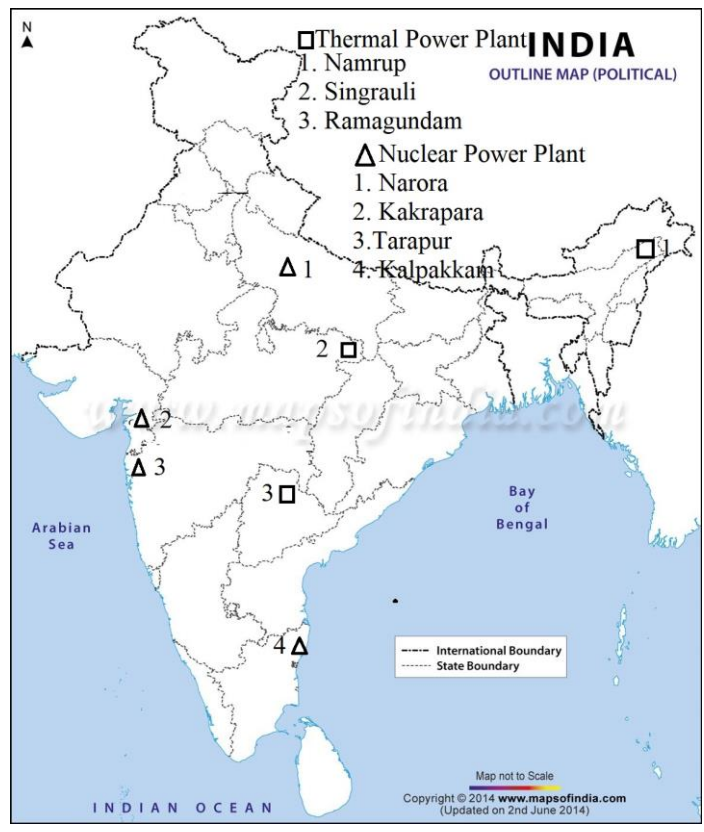
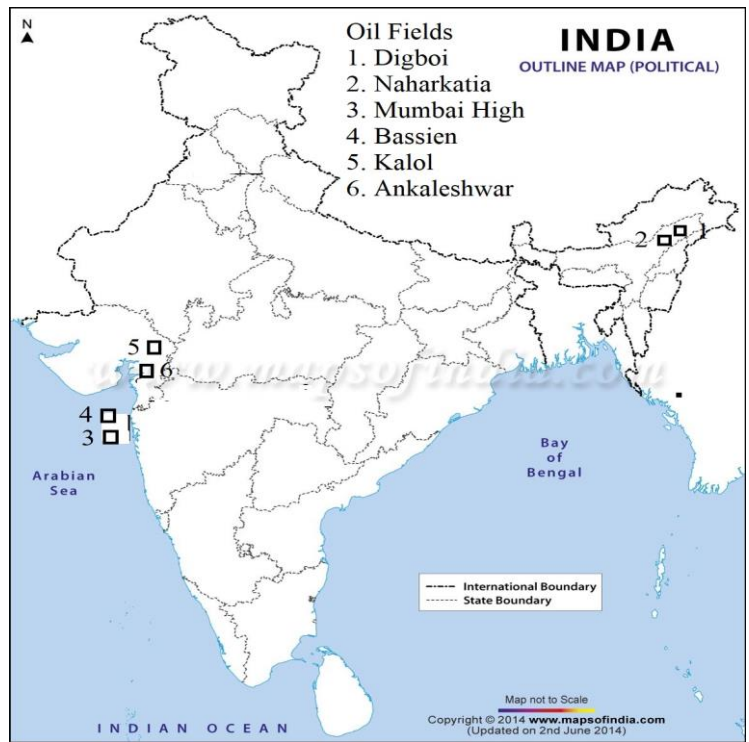
**Map Skills**

**(3Marks)**

45. Identify following in the political map of India.







## Chapter 10. MANUFACTURING INDUSTRIES

### Introduction

Manufacturing is the production of goods in large quantities after processing raw materials into more valuable products. Industries that manufacture finished products from primary materials are called manufacturing industries.

### Importance of Manufacturing

**The manufacturing industry is vital to progress since it provides the following**

- Manufacturing industries help in modernizing agriculture; which forms the backbone of our economy.
- Manufacturing industries also reduce the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income because of the creation of new jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors.
- Industrial development helps in the eradication of unemployment and poverty.
- Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce and brings in much needed foreign exchange.
- It contributes to national prosperity by stimulating the economy.

### Agro Based Industries

- Industries based on agricultural raw materials are called agro based industries. For example, cotton textiles, jute textiles, sugar industry, etc.

### Mineral Based Industries

Manufacturing industries that use minerals as raw material are called mineral-based industries. The iron and steel industry are the basic industry on which all other industries depend. The production and per capita consumption of steel is a measure of a country's economic development.

### Types of Mineral Based Industries

#### **1. Iron and Steel Industry**

The iron and steel industry are the basic industry since all the other industries — heavy, medium and light, depend on it for their machinery.

#### **2. Aluminium Smelting:**

- ❖ Aluminium Smelting is the second most important metallurgical industry in India. It is used to manufacture aircraft, utensils and wires. Bauxite is the raw material used in the smelters.
- ❖ Aluminium has gained popularity as a substitute for steel, copper, zinc and lead in a number of industries. It exhibits the following properties:

- (i) Light in weight
- (ii) Resistant to corrosion
- (iii) A good conductor of heat
- (iv) Malleable
- (v) Becomes strong when it is mixed with other metals

#### **3. Chemical Industries**

- ❖ The chemical industry comprises both large- and small-scale manufacturing units.
- ❖ Rapid growth has been recorded in both inorganic and organic sectors.

#### **4. Fertilizer Industry**

- ❖ The fertilizer industries are centred around the production of nitrogenous fertilizers (mainly urea), and complex fertilizers which have a combination of nitrogen (N), phosphate (P), and potash (K).
- ❖ Gujarat, Tamil Nadu, Uttar Pradesh, Punjab and Kerala contribute towards half of the fertilizer production.

#### **5. Automobile Industry**

- ❖ This industry deals with the manufacturing of trucks, buses, cars, motorcycles, scooters, three-wheelers and multi-utility vehicles.
- ❖ These industries are located around Delhi, Gurugram, Mumbai, Pune, Chennai, Kolkata, Lucknow, Indore, Hyderabad, Jamshedpur and Bengaluru.

## 6. Information Technology and Electronics Industry

- ❖ The electronics industry covers a wide range of products from transistor sets to television, telephones, cellular telecom, telephone exchange, radars, computers and many other equipment required by the telecommunication industry.
- ❖ This industry has generated employment in India. Bengaluru is known as the electronic capital of India.

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

#### 1. Tools, implements, fertilizers, tractors etc. are supplied by:

- a) Government                      b) Industry                      c) People                      d) None of these

Ans: (b) Industry

#### 2. \_\_\_\_\_ pollution of water occurs when hot water from factories and thermal plants is drained into rivers and ponds before cooling.

- a) Thermal                      b) Industrial                      c) Noise                      d) Air

Ans: (a) Thermal

#### 3. Which one of the following public organizations is responsible for the marketing of steel of the public sector undertaking?

- a) TISCO                      b) IISCO                      c) BHEL                      d) SAIL

Ans: (d) SAIL

#### 4. Which material is used in the manufacture of Aircrafts?

- a) Steel                      b) Iron                      c) Aluminium smelting                      d) Nickel

Ans: (c) Aluminium smelting

#### 5. By which gas air pollution causes?

- a) Sulphur dioxide                      b) Carbon dioxide                      c) Nitrogen oxide                      d) Nitrogen dioxide

Ans: (a) Sulphur dioxide

#### 6. Industrial locations are influenced by availability of \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) Market                      b) Labour                      c) Raw material                      d) All of these

Ans: (d) All of these.

#### 7. Waste from nuclear plants, nuclear and weapon production facilities cause \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) Cancers, birth defects                      b) Skin diseases                      c) Viral diseases                      d) Bacterial diseases

Ans: (a) Cancers, birth defects.

#### 8. On what basis is the industrial sector classified into public and private sectors?

- a) Employment condition                      c) The nature of economic activity  
b) Ownership of enterprises                      d) Number of workers employed in the enterprise

Ans: (b) Ownership of enterprises

#### 9. Which city is known as the automobile center of India?

- a) Jamshedpur                      b) Chennai                      c) Jaipur                      d) Noida

Ans: (b) Chennai

#### 10. Which of the following industries is the second most important metallurgical industry in India?

- a) Chemical industry                      b) Aluminium smelting                      c) Iron and steel industry                      d) None of these

Ans: (b) Aluminium smelting

#### 11. Which of the following is a negative effect of industrialisation?

- a) Economic growth and globalization                      c) Foreign exchange earnings  
b) Pollution and environmental degradation                      d) Rapid urbanization

Ans: (b) Pollution and environmental degradation

#### 12. Industries based on agriculture are called \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) Key industries                      b) Mineral based industry                      c) Agro based industry                      d) Basic industry

Ans: (c) Agro based industry

#### 13. Which of the following is caused by the discharge of organic and inorganic industrial waste and effluents into rivers and water bodies?

- a) Air pollution                      b) Water pollution                      c) Noise pollution                      d) Thermal pollution

Ans: (b) Water pollution

#### 14. Which sector is considered as the backbone in the overall economic development of a country?

- a) Manufacturing sector                      b) Service sector                      c) Agriculture sector                      d) None of these



Ans: (a) Manufacturing Sector

**15. Which of the following activities employees' people in the manufacturing of primary materials into finished goods?**

- a) Secondary activities      b) Primary activities      c) Tertiary activities      d) None of these

Ans: (a) Secondary Activities

**16. Which of the following is emitted by chemical and paper factories, brick kilns, refineries and smelting plants?**

- a) Fog      b) Smoke      c) Water      d) All of these

Ans: (b) Smoke

**17. Which of the following adversely affects human health, animals, plants, building and the atmosphere as a whole?**

- a) Noise pollution      b) Thermal pollution      c) Air pollution      d) Water pollution

Ans: (c) Air Pollution

**18. Which of the following industries uses bauxite as a raw material?**

- a) Aluminium      b) Cement      c) Jute      d) Steel.

Ans: (a) Aluminium

**19. Which of the following is a Basic Industry?**

- a) Sugar      b) Cotton      c) Jute      d) Iron and steel

Ans: (d) Iron and Steel

**20. Which of the following industries manufactures telephones, computer, etc.?**

- a) Steel      b) Electronic      c) Aluminum smelting      d) Information technology

Ans: (b) Electronic

#### **VERY SHORT ANSWER TYPE QUESTIONS**

**(2 Marks)**

**21. What is manufacturing?**

**Ans.** Production of goods in large quantities after processing from raw materials to more valuable products are called manufacturing.

**22. Name the industries which increase the noise pollution?**

**Ans.** Generators, Industrial and Construction activities, machinery, factory equipment, saws and pneumatic and electric drills.

**23. What is the importance of manufacturing industries?**

**Ans.** By the development and competitiveness of manufacturing industries the agricultural production increases and trade-commerce get support and efficiency.

**24. Name the most important agro-based industries of India.**

**Ans.** Sugar, cotton, jute are the most important agro-based industries in India.

**25. On what basis is the industrial sector classified into public and private sectors?**

**Ans.** On the basis of ownership of Enterprises the industrial sector is classified into public and private sectors.

**26. What does thermal pollution mean?**

**Ans.** Thermal pollution of water occurs when hot water from factories and thermal plants is drained into rivers and ponds before cooling.

**27. Classified industries on the basis of source of raw materials.**

**Ans.** Agro based industries and mineral based industries.

**28. What are the main use of aluminium?**

**Ans.** Aluminium is used to manufacture aircraft, utensils and wires.

**29. What are light industries?**

**Ans.** Industries that use light raw materials and produce light goods are called light industries.  
Example: Industries manufacturing sewing machine and electric fans.

**30. Name three human inputs that control location of industries.**

**Ans.** Human inputs that control location of industries is Labour, Market and Transport facilities.

#### **SHORT ANSWER QUESTIONS**

**(3 Marks)**

**31. Why the manufacturing industries are considered as the backbone of economic development of India?**

Ans.

- (i) Help in modernising agriculture.
- (ii) Provides employments in secondary and tertiary service sectors.
- (iii) Brings in, much needed foreign exchange.
- (iv) Is helpful in providing unemployment and poverty.
- (v) Increases National income.

**32. How is public sector different from private sector?**

Ans. In public sector government owns most of the Assets and provides all the services, for example Railways or post office. While in the private sector, ownership of Assets and delivery of services is in the hands of private individuals or companies, for example Tata Iron and Steel Company Limited (TISCO) or Reliance Industries Limited (RIL).

**33. What is the importance of the information technology sector for the Indian economy?**

Ans. The importance of IT sector is as follows:

- (i) It has provided employment to over one million people.
- (ii) This industry is said to be a major foreign exchange earner.
- (iii) It has helped in the growth of the service sector.
- (iv) It provides employment to innumerable men

**34. Mention any one factor that has contributed to a healthy growth of the automobile industry in India?**

Ans.

- I. The introduction of new and contemporary models stimulated the demand for vehicles in the market.
- II. Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) brought in new technology and aligned the industry with global developments

**35. Examine the causes of industrial pollution of freshwater resources.**

Ans.

- I. Organic and inorganic wastes.
- II. Effluents discharged by industries into rivers.
- III. The main culprits are paper and pulp, chemical, textile, petroleum refineries, tanneries, electroplating industries, etc

**36. Industrial unit causes air pollution? Explain**

Ans.

- I. Pollution is created by the presence of high proportion of gases released by industries.
- II. Air borne particulate materials contain both solid and liquid particles.
- III. Smoke is emitted by chemical and paper factories, brick kilns, refineries and smelting plants and burning of fossil fuels belong to the major polluting industries.

**37. Name two groups into which the chemical industry is usually classified. What is the main difference in their locations over space and why?**

Ans. The two groups are:

- I. Inorganic chemical industry
- II. Organic chemical industry.

**Inorganic chemical industries** are widely spread over the country because they use inorganic chemicals like sulphuric acid, nitric acid, alkalis, soda ash and caustic soda which can be transported anywhere.

**Organic chemical industries** are located near oil refineries or petrochemical plants so these are located at specific locations.

**38. What are software technology parks?**

Ans. Software technology parks are a cluster of software export units, in which software technology companies develop and export computer software and other professional services. In India, software technology parks are managed by the software technology parks of India, a government agency.

**39. How does industrialisation and urbanisation go hand in hand?**

Ans. Cities provide markets and also provide services such as banking, insurance, transport, labour, consultants and financial advice, etc., to industry.

**40. What are agglomeration economies?**

Ans. Many industries tend to come together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centres are known as agglomeration economies.

**LONG ANSWER QUESTIONS ( 5 marks )**

**41. Explain the pro-active approach adopted by the National Thermal Power Corporation (NTPC) for preserving the natural environment and resources.**

Ans.

- I. Optimum utilization of equipment adopting latest techniques and upgrading existing equipment.
- II. Minimising waste generation by maximising ash utilization.
- III. Providing green belts for nurturing ecological balances and encouraging afforestation.
- IV. Reducing environmental pollution through ash pond management, ash water recycling system and liquid waste management.
- V. Ecological monitoring reviews and online database management for all its power stations.

**42. Suggest any five measures to reduce the water pollution.**

Ans. Steps to minimize water pollution:

- I. Minimising use of water for processing by reusing and recycling it in two or more successive stages. Harvesting of rainwater to meet water requirements.
- II. Treating hot water and effluents before releasing them in rivers and ponds. Treatment of industrial effluents can be done in three phases
- III. Primary treatment by mechanical means. This involves screening, grinding, flocculation and sedimentation.
- IV. Secondary treatment by biological process
- V. Tertiary treatment by biological, chemical and physical processes. This involves recycling of wastewater.
- VI. Overdrawing of groundwater needs to be regulated legally.

**43. Classify industries on the basis of ownership.**

Ans. On the basis of ownership, industries can be classified as:

- I. **Public Sector:** These industries are owned and operated by the government agencies.
- II. **Private Sector:** These industries are owned and operated by private entrepreneurs, e.g., TISCO, Bajaj Auto Ltd., Reliance Industries, Dabur Industries, etc.
- III. **Joint Sector:** These industries are jointly run by the state and individual or a group of individuals. Oil India Ltd. (OIL) is jointly owned by public and private sectors.
- IV. **Cooperative Sector:** These industries are owned and operated by the producers or suppliers of raw materials, workers or both. They pool in the resources and share the profits or losses proportionately such as the sugar industry in Maharashtra, the coir industry in Kerala.

**44. Suggest any five measures to control industrial pollution in India.**

Ans. Measures to Control Industrial Pollution

- I. Minimizing the use of water for processing by reusing and recycling it in two or more successive stages
- II. Harvesting of rainwater to meet water requirements
- III. Treating hot water and effluents before releasing them in to rivers and ponds.
- IV. Treatment of industrial effluents can be done in three phases
- V. Primary treatment by mechanical means involves screening, grinding, flocculation and sedimentation., Secondary treatment by biological process, Tertiary treatment by biological, chemical and physical processes. This Involves recycling of wastewater.
- VI. Over drawing of ground water needs to be regulated legally.
- VII. Particulate matter in the air can be reduced by fitting smoke stacks to factories with electrostatic precipitators, fabric filters, scrubbers and inertial separators.

**45. Describe the various physical and human factors responsible for the location of industries.**

Ans.

**Physical factors:**

- I. Availability of raw materials – This factor is more important for heavy industries like iron and steel, cement industry, etc.

- II. Availability of power resources – Proximity to power resources like coal, and electricity will attract more industries.
- III. Availability of water – Almost all industries require a huge quantity of water.
- IV. Availability of favourable climate.

**Human factors:**

- I. The availability of skilled and unskilled laborers attracts more industries.
- II. Proximity to market – This reduces transport costs and delays.
- III. Infrastructural facilities – Like banking, transport, communication, etc. attract more industries.
- IV. Government policy – Tax benefits and subsidies on inputs play an important role in industrial location

**46. ‘The challenge of sustainable development requires control over industrial pollution.’ Substantiate the statement with examples.**

Ans.

- I. On one hand Industries lead to extensive industrial growth and expansion, other hand these are also the cause of environmental degeneration which prompt to the different type of air, water pollution.
- II. There is an increasing requirement to use a further sustainable model.
- III. Industries must produce eco-friendly products and dump wastes responsibly. iv.
- IV. Use of latest technology can help industries to control pollution and lead towards sustainable mode of operation.
- V. Industries use- Reuse-Recycle-Refuse approach.
- VI. If necessary, du Industries use- Reuse-Recycle-Refuse approach.
- VII. If necessary, dump waste in specified places, away from the land and water sources, for example- before dumping treat well and make useful for other than drinking purpose, stop using thermal plants in some of the locations.

**47. Explain five types of industrial pollution.**

Ans.

- I. **Air pollution:** High proportion of carbon dioxide, sulphur dioxide, and carbon monoxide create air pollution. Suspended particulate matters also create problems.
- II. **Water pollution:** Organic and inorganic industrial wastes and effluents cause water pollution. Paper, pulp, chemicals, textiles, dyeing, petroleum refineries, etc. are the main culprits of water pollution.
- III. **Thermal pollution:** Hot water from factories and thermal plants is drained into rivers and ponds before cooling.
- IV. **Radioactive waste:** wastes from nuclear power plants cause cancer, birth defects, miscarriages, etc.
- V. **Noise pollution:** Results in irritation, hypertension, and hearing impairment.

**48. Describe the importance of manufacturing industries as a backbone of economic development of the country.**

Ans. Importance of manufacturing industries

- I. Help in modernising agriculture
- II. Eradication of unemployment and poverty
- III. Expands trade and commerce
- IV. Brings foreign exchange
- V. Transform their raw materials into a wide variety of finished goods.
- VI. Increase standard of living and per capita income
- VII. Self-sufficiency.

**SOURCE BASED QUESTION**

**(4 Marks)**

**49. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

Industrial locations are complex in nature. These are influenced by availability of raw material, labour, capital, power and market, etc. It is rarely possible to find all these factors available at one place. Consequently, manufacturing activity tends to locate at the most appropriate place where all the factors of industrial location are either available or can be arranged at lower cost. After an industrial activity starts, urbanisation follows. Sometimes, industries are located in or near the cities. Thus industrialisation, and urbanisation go hand in hand. cities provide markets and also provide services such as banking, insurance, transport, labour, consultants and financial advice, etc. to the industry. Many industries tend to come

together to make use of the advantages offered by the urban centres known as agglomeration Economies. gradually a large industrial agglomeration takes place.

**(i) On what factors are the location of industries depending on?**

Ans: It is dependent on availability of raw material labour, capital power and market, etc.

**(ii) What do you understand by agglomeration economies?**

Ans: Many industries tend to come together to make use of the advantages of offered by the urban centres known as agglomeration economies.

**(iii) How do industrialization and urbanization go hand in hand?**

Ans: Cities provide markets and also provide services such as banking insurance transport labour consultants and financial advice, etc. to the industry.

**50. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

Overdrawing of ground water reserves by industry where there is a threat to ground water resources also needs to be regulated legally. Particulate matter in the air can be reduced by fitting smoke stacks to factories with electrostatic precipitators, fabric filters, scrubbers and inertial separators. Smoke can be reduced by using oil or gas instead of coal in factories. Machinery and equipment can be used and generators should be fitted with silencers. Almost all machinery can be redesigned to increase energy efficiency and reduce noise. Noise absorbing material may be used apart from personal use of earplugs and earphones. The challenge of sustainable development requires integration of economic development with environmental concerns.

**(i) How many treatments are there for industrial effluents?**

Ans: There are three types of treatments for industrial effluents.

**(ii) What could be done to reduce pollution of machinery and equipment?**

Ans: Almost all machinery can be redesigned to increase energy efficiency and reduce noise. Noise absorbing material may be used apart from personal use of earplugs and earphones.

**(iii) What are the challenges of sustainable development faced in India?**

Ans: Degrading air quality index, growing water scarcity and lack of waste management.

**51. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

Automobiles provide vehicles for quick transport of good services and passengers. Trucks, buses, cars, motorcycles, scooters, three-wheelers and multiutility vehicles are manufactured in India at various centres. After the liberalisation, the coming of new and contemporary models stimulated the demand for vehicles in the market, which led to the healthy growth of the industry including passenger cars, two and three-wheelers. The industry is located around Delhi, Gurugram, Mumbai, Pune, Chennai, Kolkata, Lucknow, Indore, Hyderabad, Jamshedpur and Bengaluru.

**(i) Mention any four locations of automobile industry in India.**

Ans: (i) Delhi (ii) Gurugram (iii) Mumbai (iv) Pune (v) Chennai (vi) Kolkata

**(ii) What are the advantages of the automobile industry in India?**

Ans: Automobiles provide vehicles for quick transport of goods, services and passengers.

**(iii) What factors determine the location of the automobile industry in India?**

Ans: It tends to be located near iron and steel production centres because steel is the basic raw material used in this industry. Port sites are also found to be favourable because of the import and export facilities offered by such places.

**52. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

Manufacturing sector is considered the backbone of development in general and economic development in particular mainly because-Manufacturing industries not only help in modernising agriculture, which forms the backbone of our economy, they also reduce the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income by providing them jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors. Industrial development is a precondition for eradication of unemployment and poverty from our country. This was the main philosophy behind public sector industries and joint sector ventures in India. It was also aimed at bringing down regional disparities by establishing industries in tribal and backward areas. Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce, and brings in much needed foreign exchange. Countries that transform their raw materials into a wide variety of finished goods of higher value are prosperous. India's prosperity lies in increasing and diversifying its manufacturing industries as quickly as possible.

**(i) Why manufacturing sector is considered as the backbone of development?**

Ans: Manufacturing sector is considered the backbone of development in general and economic development in particular mainly because Manufacturing industries not only help in modernising agriculture, which forms the backbone of our economy.

**(ii) How manufacturing sector reduce the dependence on agricultural sector?**

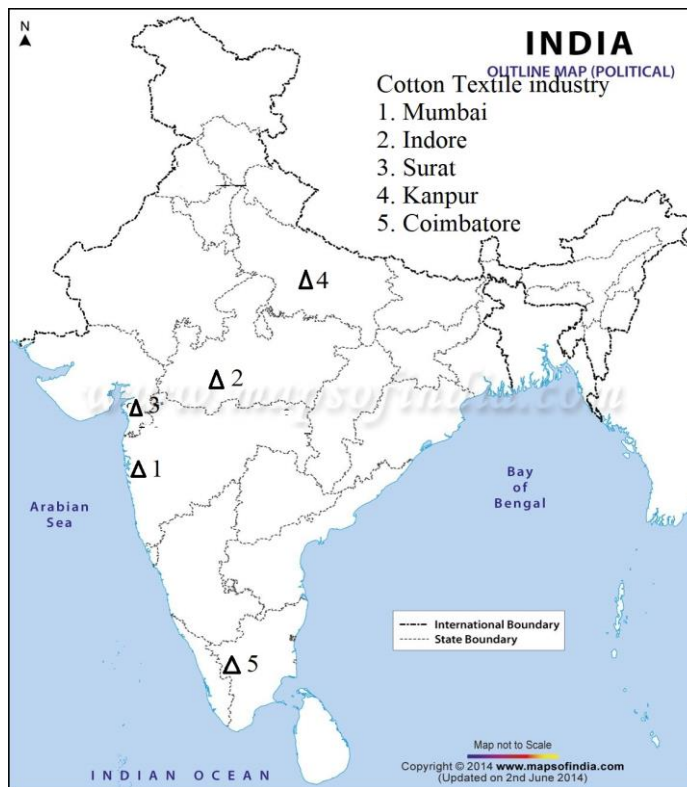
Ans: Manufacturing sector reduce the heavy dependence of people on agricultural income by providing them jobs in secondary and tertiary sectors.

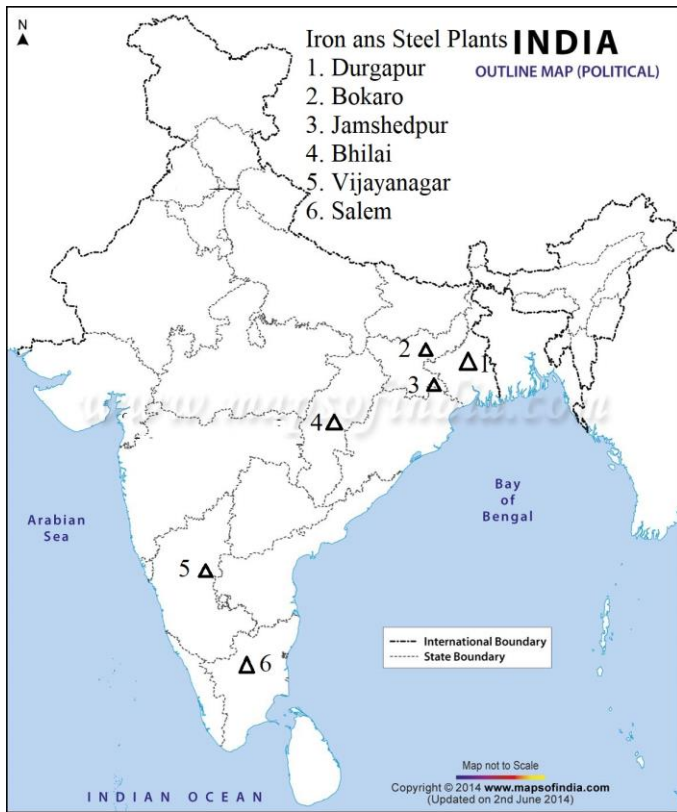
**(iii) What effect occur when export of manufactured goods expands?**

Ans: Export of manufactured goods expands trade and commerce, and brings in much needed foreign exchange. Countries that transform their raw materials into a wide variety of finished goods of higher value are prosperous.

**Map work**

53. Locate and label the following on the political map of India.





# Chapter 11. Lifelines of National Economy

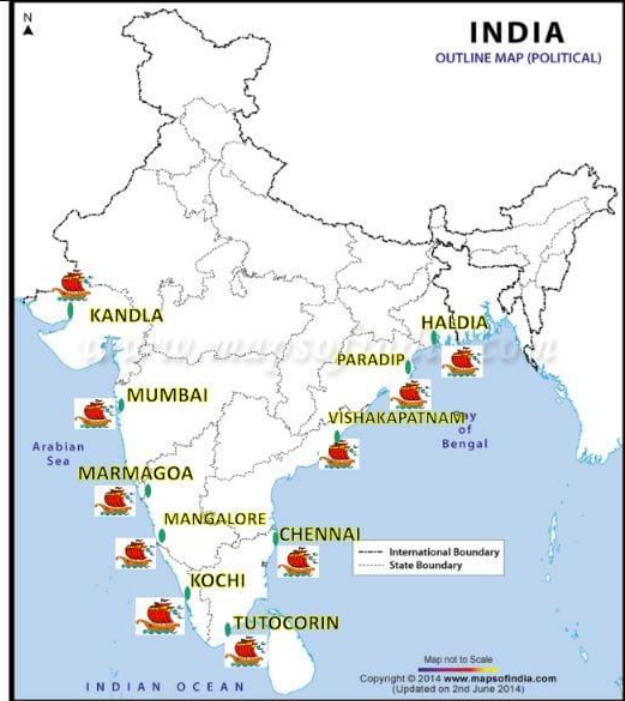
## Chapter 7: Lifelines of National Economy

(Locating and Labelling)

### Major Ports:



- a. Kandla
- b. Mumbai
- c. Marmagao
- d. New Mangalore
- e. Kochi
- f. Tuticorin
- g. Chennai
- h. Vishakhapatnam
- i. Paradip
- j. Haldia



### International Airports:



- a. Amritsar (Raja Sansi)
- b. Delhi (Indira Gandhi International)
- c. Mumbai (Chhatrapati Shivaji)
- d. Chennai (Meenam Bakkam)
- e. Kolkata (Netaji Subhash Chandra Bose)
- f. Hyderabad (Rajiv Gandhi)

Note: Items of Locating and Labelling may also be given for Identification





# DEMOCRATIC POLITICS

## Chapter 12- POWER SHARING

### Story of Belgium

Belgium is a small country in Europe with a population of over 1 crore, about half the population of Haryana. Of the country's total population, 59% speaks Dutch language, 40% of people speak French and the remaining 1% speaks German. Look at the map below to know the language variation of Belgium. The minority French-speaking community was rich and powerful so they got the benefit of economic development and education. This created tensions between the Dutch-speaking and French speaking communities during the 1950s and 1960

### Story of Sri Lanka

Now, let us take a situation of another country, Sri Lanka. It is an island nation having a population of 2 cores, about the same as in Haryana. Sri Lanka has a diverse population. The major social groups are the Sinhala-speakers (74%) and the Tamil-speakers (18%). Among Tamils, there are two subgroups, "Sri Lankan Tamils" and "Indian Tamils". You can see the map below to know the population distribution of different communities of Sri Lanka

### Majoritarianism in Sri Lanka

Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country in 1948. The Sinhala community was in the majority so they had formed the government. In 1956, an Act was passed to recognize Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamil. The governments followed preferential policies that favored Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs. A new constitution stipulated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism. These measures taken by the government gradually increased the feeling of alienation among the Sri Lankan Tamils. Sri Lankan Tamils felt that constitution and government policies denied them equal political rights, discriminated against them in getting jobs and other opportunities and ignored their interests. Due to which the relationship between the Sinhala and Tamil communities become poor. Sri Lankan Tamils launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language, for regional autonomy and equality of opportunity in securing education and jobs. But their demand was repeatedly denied by the government. The distrust between the two communities turned into widespread conflict and turned into a CIVIL WAR. As a result, thousands of people of both the communities have been killed. Many families were forced to leave the country as refugees and many more lost their livelihoods. The civil war ended in 2009 and caused a terrible setback to the social, cultural and economic life of the country.

### Form of Power Sharing

Most of you must think that Sharing power = dividing power = weakening the country. The similar thing was believed in the past. It was assumed that all the power of a government must reside in one person or group of persons located at one place. Otherwise, it would be very difficult to make quick decisions and to enforce them. But these notions have changed with the emergence of democracy. In a democracy, people rule themselves through institutions of self-government. Everyone has a voice in the shaping of public policies. Therefore, in a democratic country, political power should be distributed among citizens.

In modern democracies, power sharing can take many forms, as mentioned below:

1. Power is shared among different organs of government, such as the legislature, executive and judiciary. This is called horizontal distribution of power because it allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers. Such separation ensures that none of the organs can exercise unlimited power. Each organ checks the others. This arrangement is called a system of checks and balances.
2. Power can be shared among governments at different levels - a general government for the entire country and governments at the provincial or regional level which is called federal government.

3. Power may also be shared among different social groups such as the religious and linguistic groups. 'Community government' in Belgium is a good example of this arrangement. This method is used to give minority communities a fair share in power.
4. Power sharing arrangements can also be seen in the way political parties, pressure groups and movements control or influence those in power. When two or more parties form an alliance to contest elections and if they get elected, they form a coalition government and thus share power

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

**1. In Belgium, out of the total population, 59 per cent live in the Flemish region and speak \_\_\_\_\_ language.**

- (A) Dutch (B) French (C) English (D) German

**Ans -(A) Dutch**

**2. In Belgium, there were tensions between the Dutch-speaking and \_\_\_\_\_-speaking communities during the 1950s and 1960s.**

- (A) German (B) French (C) English (D) Russian

**Ans -(B) French**

**3. How many times the Constitution of Belgium was amended between 1970 and 1993?**

- (A) Two times (B) Three times (C) Five times (D) Four times

**Ans-(D) Four times**

**4. The amended Constitution of Belgium prescribed that the number of \_\_\_\_\_ and French-speaking ministers shall be equal in the Central Government.**

- (A) Italian (B) German (C) English (D) Dutch

**Ans-(D) Dutch**

**5. \_\_\_\_\_ is elected by people belonging to one language community – Dutch, French and German-speaking – no matter where they live. This government has the power regarding cultural, educational and language-related issues.**

- (A) District Government (B) State Government  
(C) Community Government (D) Central Government

**Ans-(C) Community Government**

**6. Which one of the following communities constituted majority in Brussels?**

- (A) French Speaking (B) Dutch Speaking (C) German Speaking (D) None of them

**Ans-(A) French Speaking**

**7. In the island nation of Sri Lanka, the Sri Lankan Tamil population is concentrated in the \_\_\_\_\_ end \_\_\_\_\_ of the country.**

- (A) South and West (B) South and East (C) North and Central (D) North and East

**Ans-(D) North and East**

**8. Sri Lanka emerged as an independent country in \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) 1948 (B) 1947 (C) 1949 (D) 1958

**Ans-(A) 1948**

**9. In \_\_\_\_\_, an Act was passed to recognize Sinhala as the only official language, thus disregarding Tamil.**

- (A) 1958 (B) 1956 (C) 1968 (D) None of the above

**Ans-(B) 1956**

**10. Most of the Sinhala-speaking people of Sri Lanka are \_\_\_\_\_.**

- (A) Christians (B) Hindus (C) Buddhists (D) Muslims

**Ans-(C) Buddhists**

**11. In which one of the following countries principles of majoritarianism led to civil war?**

- (A) Pakistan (B) Sri Lanka (C) Belgium (D) India

**Ans-(B) Sri Lanka**

**12. Which one of the following is not a valid reason for power sharing?**

- (A) For majoritarianism (B) Being part and parcel of democracy  
(C) To reduce tensions (D) For political stability

**Ans-(A) For majoritarianism**

**13. Power sharing is good because:**

- (A) It increases the conflict between social groups  
(B) It ensures the instability of political order  
(C) It reduces the possibility of conflict between social groups  
(D) It leads to violence

**Ans-(C) It reduces the possibility of conflict between social groups**

**14. Power can be shared in modern democracies in the following ways:**

- (A) Among different organs of the government (B) Among various levels  
(C) Among different social groups (D) All the above

**Ans-(D) All the above**

**15. Division of powers between higher and lower levels of government is called**

- (A) horizontal distribution (B) parallel distribution  
(C) vertical division (D) diagonal division

**Ans-(C) vertical division**

**16. A system of 'checks and balances' is another name for which one of the following power-sharing arrangements:**

- (A) Power sharing among different social groups.  
(B) Vertical division of power or power shared among different levels of government.  
(C) Horizontal division of power or power shared among different organs of the government.  
(D) Power sharing in the form of political parties, pressure groups and governments.

**Ans-(C) Horizontal division of power or power shared among different organs of the government.**

**17-20 Assertion Reason. Choose the correct option.**

- (A) If both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are true and Reason (R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).  
(B) If both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are true but Reason (R) is not the correct explanation of Assertion (A).  
(C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason (R) is false.  
(D) Both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are false.

**17. Assertion (A): In Belgium, the leaders realized that the unity of the country is possible by respecting the feelings and interest of different countries.**

**Reason: Belgium favoured Dutch speaking community.**

**Answer-** (B) Both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are true but Reason (R) is not the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

**18. Assertion (A): Horizontal distribution of power allows different organs of the government placed at same level to exercise different powers.**

**Reason(R): The separation ensures that different organs can exercise unlimited power**

**Answer-** (C) Assertion (A) is true but Reason (R) is false.

**19. Assertion (A): Power sharing is good for democracy.**

**Reason (R): It helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between the social groups.**

**Answer-** (A) Both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are true and Reason (R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

**20. Assertion (A): Power can be shared among governments at different levels – a general government for the entire country and governments at the provincial or regional level. Reason (R): Such a general government for the entire country is usually called federal government.**

**Answer-** (A) Both Assertion (A) and Reason (R) are true and Reason (R) is the correct explanation of Assertion (A).

**Very Short Answer Questions**

**(2 marks)**

**21. What is power sharing? Explain.**

**Ans:** - (I) the concept of providing a permanent share of power in the government different communities or regions is termed as power sharing. Under this the people and the leaders of the nation respect the feelings and interests of different communities and regions.

(II) The principle of power sharing is very important for the unity and growth of democracy.

**22. Define the term 'Ethnic'.**

**Ans:** - Ethnic means a social division based on shared culture and common descent. People belonging to an ethnic group need not have the same religion or nationality.

**23. What is the relationship between democracy and power sharing?**

**Ans:** - 'Democracy' means giving every citizen the right and power to make the decisions through their elected representatives. Power sharing is dividing power among various social groups to give them equal representation in the governance. Power sharing is the essence of democracy where every individual, irrespective of cultural and language differences feel involved in the political system.

**24. What is vertical division of power?**

**Ans:** - When power is shared among governments at different levels, i.e., the Union or the Central Government, the State Government and the Municipality and Panchayat at the lower level. This division of power involving higher and lower levels of government is called the vertical division of power.

**25. Sharing of powers makes a country more powerful and united'. Justify the statement.**

**Ans:** - Sharing of power makes a country more powerful and united because of the following reasons.

Power sharing ensures that all people have stake in government.

Power sharing ensures maximum participation. It upholds the concept of people's rule. It always brings better outcomes in democracy. It ensures the political stability in democracy.

Power sharing accommodates diverse groups. It helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups.

**26. What is meant by the system of "checks and balances"?**

**Ans:** - The horizontal distribution of power ensures that power is shared among different organs of Government—the legislature, executive and judiciary. It allows different organs of government placed at the same level to exercise different powers. The horizontal distribution of power is also called a system of checks and balances. This system ensures that none of these organs can exercise unlimited power. Each organ checks the other.

**27. What is the concept of 'Community government' of Belgium?**

**Ans:** - The community government is elected by the people belonging to one language community- Dutch, French and German speaking - no matter where they live. This government has the power regarding cultural, educational and language related issues.

**28. Why was the minority French speaking community relatively rich and powerful?**

**Ans:** - The minority French speaking people community relatively rich and powerful Because:

(I) French speaking people got the benefit of economic development; they were well- qualified and educated.

(II) Their education helped them to expand business and they were Well-settled.

**29. Explain any two important differences between the power sharing model accepted by Belgium and Sri Lanka.**

**Ans:** - (I) The Belgium leaders tried to solve the ethnic problem by respecting the feelings and interests of different communities and regions, whereas the Sri Lankan government tried to solve the problem through majoritarianism.

(II) Belgium leaders established a federal structure under which power was shared between the Union Government and its other constituent units whereas Sri Lankan leaders adopted Unitary Government structure.

**30. Explain the ethnic problem of Sri Lanka.**

**Ans:** - (I) In Silence there are two communities' Sinhala and Tamil Among Tamils the Tamil natives who are called, Sri Lankan Tamils and the Indian Tamils whose forefathers come from India as plantation workers during the colonial period.

(II) Most of the Sinhala are Buddhist and Tamils are Hindus or Muslims. So, in Sri Lanka the problem was who is going to hold power and enjoy the economic benefits.

**Short Answer Questions**

**(3 marks)**

**31. What is a Civil War? Explain with context to Sri Lanka.**

**Ans:** - (I) It is a violent conflict between the opposing groups within a country, for example the Sinhalese and the Tamils.

(II) Due to the violent conflict between both these ethnic groups thousands of people of both the communities have been killed. Many families were forced to leave the country as refugees and many more lost their livelihoods.

(III) The civil war has caused a terrible setback to the social, cultural and economic life of the country.

**32. Power sharing is the very spirit of democracy. Justify the statement?**

**Ans:** - Power sharing is the spirit of Democracy because

(I) It helps to reduce the conflict between social groups.

(II) It is a good way to ensure the stability of the political order.

(III) Here, people have the right to be consulted on how they are to be governed. Thus a legitimate government is one where citizens, through participation, acquire a stake in the system.

**33. Describe the ethnic composition of Belgium?**

**Ans:** - The ethnic composition of Belgium is very Complex.

(I) It has two main languages: Dutch and French. Of the country's total population, 59% lives in the Flemish region and speaks Dutch language.

(II) Another 40% people live in the Wallonia region and speak French. Remaining 1% speak German.

(III) In the Capital city Brussels, 80% people speak French while 20% are Dutch- speaking.

**34. Which values are associated with the idea of power sharing in any country?**

**Ans:** - The values are associated with the idea of power sharing in any country are;

(I) It helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between social groups and bring peace in the society.

(II) It ensures that stability of political orders.

(III) It is the very spirit of democracy. Everyone has a voice in the shaping of public policies.

**35. Why was Brussels chosen as the headquarters during the formation of European Union?**

**Ans:** - Brussels chosen as the headquarter during the formation of Europe Union because;

(I) The Belgian leaders recognized the existence of regional differences and cultural diversities.

(II) Between 1970 and 1993, they amended their Constitution four times, so as to work out an arrangement that would enable everyone to live together within the same country.

(III) This arrangement was different from any other country and was very innovative, such as they put the equal number of ministers in the central government from Dutch and French speaking both.

**36. Which three demands of the Sri Lankan Tamil accepted and met, could have settled the ethnic conflict in Sri Lanka for good? Explain.**

**Ans:** - Demands of the Tamils:

(I) Recognition of Tamil as an official language.

(II) Equal opportunities for Tamils in government jobs and educational institutions.

(III) Provincial autonomy for Tamil-dominated provinces.

**37. What led to the ethnic tension in Belgium? Why was it more acute in Brussels?**

**Ans:** - The minority French-speaking community was relatively rich and powerful. So the Dutch speaking community, who got the benefit of economic development and education much later showed the resentment between the Dutch-speaking and the French-speaking communities during the 1950s and

the 1960s. The conflict between the two communities was more severe in Brussels because the Dutch speaking people constituted a majority in the country, but a minority in the capital.

**38. Describe any three provisions of the Act which was passed in Sri Lanka in 1956 to establish Sinhala supremacy.**

**Or,**

**Why did Sri Lankan Tamils feel alienated?**

**Ans:** - Sri Lankan Tamils felt alienated because:

- (I) The government adopted majoritarian measures to establish Sinhala supremacy. In 1956, an Act was passed to recognize Sinhala as the only official language thus disregarding Tamil.
- (II) The government followed preferential politics that favoured Sinhala applicants for university positions and government jobs.
- (III) A new Constitution stipulated that the state shall protect and foster Buddhism.

**Long Answer Questions (5 marks)**

**39. Explain the reasons why power sharing is important in a democracy?**

**Ans:** - Power sharing is important in democracy for two reasons:-

**(A) Prudential Reason:** These lay emphasis on better outcomes of Power sharing.

- (I) Power sharing helps to reduce the possibility of conflict between the social groups. Thus, it ensures the stability of the political order.
- (II) Its absence results into domination of majority community, which undermines the Unity of the Nation.

**(B) Moral Reason:** These stress on power sharing as a valuable act because

- (I) It is the very spirit of democracy.
- (II) A democratic rule involves it with those affected by its exercise and who have to live with its effect.
- (III) A legitimate Government is the one where citizens acquire a role in the system through participation.

**40. Differentiate between horizontal and vertical division of powers?**

**Ans:** - **Horizontal Division of power:** -

- (I) In this division, power sharing arrangement, power is shared among different organs of government such as legislature, executive and judiciary.
- (II) In this, division different organs of government exercise different powers. It is a concept of separation of power.
- (III) It specific the concept of checks and balances in order to check the unlimited power of the different organs.

**Vertical Division of power:** -

- (I) In this division, power sharing arrangements, Power is shared among governments at different levels like union, state and local level.
- (II) In this division Constitution clearly lays down the power of the different levels of government.
- (III) In this division, there is no concept of check and balance because powers are clearly divided among higher and lower level.

**41. Describe the tension that existed between the Dutch and the French speaking people in Belgium.**

**Or**

**What were the two main causes of resentment in Belgium in 1960? How was the conflict solved?**

**Ans:** - (I) The economic inequality between the Dutch speaking and French-speaking was the basic cause of tension.

(II) The French-speaking community who was in minority was relatively rich and powerful whereas the Dutch-speaking community who was in majority was poor.

(III) This was resented by the Dutch-speaking community who for the benefit of economic development and education much later.

(IV) The tension between the two communities was more acute in Brussels. Brussels presented a special problem: the Dutch speaking people constituted a majority in the country, but a minority in the capital.

(V) Between 1970 and 1993, the Belgium government amended their constitution four times so as to work out an arrangement that would enable everyone to live together within the same country. ‘

**42. Bring out any two sharp contrasts between Belgium and Sri Lankan democracies.**

**Ans:** - Sri Lanka and Belgium are both democratic countries yet have very diverse social setups. Both countries have adopted very different approaches when it comes to power-sharing.

- (I) Belgium adopted the policy of accommodation of social and ethnic divisions. On the other hand, Sri Lanka also adopted a democratic system but followed majoritarian policies.
- (II) Under the Belgium model of democracy, power was shared among two ethnic groups. Sri Lanka favored the interests of the majority Sinhala community.
- (III) In Belgium, both groups had an equal share in the working of government but in Sri Lanka, the minority community was isolated.
- (IV) To maintain political stability and unity, equal representation was provided to both groups. Apart from that, the community government of both ethnic groups also existed at the local level. Sri Lanka, however, had no such arrangement.
- (V) Belgium’s constitution was amended four times before arriving at a final draft to prevent civil strife. In Sri Lanka, majoritarianism led to civil war for twenty long years.

**Source Based Questions**

**(1+1+2=4)**

**43. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follow:**

The Sri Lankan Tamils launched parties and struggles for the recognition of Tamil as an official language, for regional autonomy and equality of opportunity in securing education and jobs. But their demand for more autonomy to provinces populated by the Tamils was repeatedly denied. By 1980s several political organisations were formed demanding an independent Tamil Eelam (state) in northern and eastern parts of Sri Lanka.

**(i) What were the steps taken by the government of Sri Lanka to alienate Tamils?**

**Ans-** The Sinhala community was in the majority so they had formed the government. In 1956, an Act was passed to recognize Sinhala as the only official language.

**(ii) Which areas of Sri Lanka had the majority of Sinhala?**

**Ans-** The Sinhalese are mostly found in Sri Lanka in the north, central, south and west.

**(iii) Why was there dissatisfaction among Sri Lankan Tamils? What were the main demands of Tamils?**

**Ans-** Sri Lankan Tamils felt alienated because: 1956, an Act was passed to recognize Sinhala as the only official language thus disregarding Tamil. for university positions and government jobs. Sinhala leaders were sensitive to their language and culture. Overtime and it soon turned into a Civil War

## Chapter 13. FEDERALISM

**Federalism** is a system of government in which power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country.

A federation has two levels of government. Both these levels of governments enjoy their power independent of the other.



## Difference Between Unitary System and Federal System

Unitary System	Federal System
There is only one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the Central Government.	There are two or more levels (or tiers) of government.
The Central Government can pass on orders to the provincial or local government.	The Central Government cannot order the state government to do something.
The central government is supreme, and the administrative divisions exercise only powers that the central government has delegated to them. Their powers may be broadened and narrowed by the central government	State Government has powers of its own for which it is not answerable to the central government.

### What Makes India a Federal Country?

All the features of the federal system apply to the provisions of the Indian Constitution.

The Indian Constitution is a three-fold distribution of legislative powers between the Union Government and the State Governments.

The 3 lists are mentioned below:

**1) Union List:** It includes subjects of national importance such as the defence of the country, foreign affairs, banking, communications and currency. The Union Government alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in this list.

**2) State List:** It contains subjects of State and local importance such as **police, trade, commerce, agriculture and irrigation**. The State Governments alone can make laws relating to the subjects mentioned in this list.

**3) Concurrent List:** It includes subjects of common interest to both the Union Government as well as the State Governments. The list includes **education, forest, trade unions, marriage, adoption and succession**. Both the Union as well as the State Governments can make laws on the subjects mentioned in this list. If their laws conflict with each other, the law made by the Union Government will be considered.

### Decentralization in India

When power is taken away from Central and State governments and given to the local government, it is called decentralization.

The basic idea behind decentralization is that there are a large number of problems and issues which are best settled at the local level. Local people can also directly participate in the decision making.



A major step towards decentralization was taken in **1992**. The Constitution was amended to make the third-tier of democracy more powerful and effective. Here are the key features of 3-tier democracy:

### **Municipalities**

As Gram Panchayat is for Rural areas, similarly we have Municipalities for urban areas.

Big cities are constituted into Municipal Corporations. Both Municipalities and Municipal Corporations are controlled by elected bodies consisting of people's representatives.

The Municipal Chairperson is the political head of the Municipality. In a Municipal Corporation such an officer is called the Mayor.

### **KEY WORDS AND TERMS**

**Federalism-** Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country.

**Unitary system-** Under the unitary system, either there is only one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the central government

**Jurisdiction--** The area over which someone has legal authority.

**Coming together Federations-** Independent States coming together on their own to form a bigger unit, so that by pooling sovereignty and retaining identity they can increase their security.

**Holding together federations-** A large country decides to divide its power between the constituent States and the national government.

**Union list-** Union List includes subjects of national importance

**State list-** contains subjects of State and local importance.

**Concurrent List-** includes subjects of common interest to both the Union Government as well as the State Governments

**Residuary List--** include all subjects that came up after the constitution was made and they do not fall in any of the three lists.

**Coalition government** –When two or more political parties come together and form a government it is called a coalition government.

### **Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)**

**1. Which type of government does the Belgium have?**

- (a) Federal                      (b) Communist                      (c) Unitary                      (d) Central

Ans: (a) Federal

**2. Major step towards decentralization in India was taken up in**

- (a) 1992.                      (b) 1993                      (c) 1991.                      (d) 1990

Ans: (a) 1992

**3. Which countries follow the unitary system of government?**

- (a) Belgium, Spain and India                      (b) USA, Japan and Belgium  
(c) United Arab Emirates, China and Sri Lanka                      (d) France, Germany and India

Ans: (c) UAE, China and Sri Lanka

**4. In federal system, central government cannot order the:**

- (a) Principal                      (b) local government                      (c) state government                      (d) none of the above

Ans: (c) state government

**5. A system of government in which power is divided between a central authority and various constituent unit of the country is called**

- (a) Federalism                      (b) Communalism                      (c) Socialism                      (d) Democracy

Ans: (a) Federalism

**6. Who has special power in administering the Union Territories in India?**

- (a) Central Government                      (b) Chief Minister                      (c) President.                      (d) Governor

Ans: (a) Central Government

**7. Which country is an example of coming together federation?**

- (a) Belgium                      (b) USA                      (c) Sri Lanka                      (d) India

Ans: (b) USA

**8. Power to interpret the constitution is with the:**

- (a) courts                      (b) judiciary                      (c) state government                      (d) none of the above

**Ans: (b) judiciary**

**9. In Unitary form of government**

- (a) all the power is divided between the centre/union and the state provincial government.  
(b) all the power is with the citizens.  
(c) State Government has all the powers  
(d) power is concentrated with the Central Government.

**Ans: (d) power is concentrated with the Central Government.**

**10. The place of Rajasthan where India conducted its nuclear tests is**

- (a) Calicut                      (b) Pokhran                      (c) Kavaratti                      (d) Karaikal

**Ans: (b) Pokhran**

**11. When power is taken away from state governments and is given to local government, it is called**

- (a) Decentralisation                      (b) Centralisation                      (c) Panchayat Samiti                      (d) Federalism

**Ans: (a) Decentralisation**

**12. The first and major test for democratic politics in our country was**

- (a) caste problem                      (b) language problem  
(c) problems related to union territories                      (d) creation of linguistic state

**Ans: (d) creation of linguistic state**

**13. Indian official language is:**

- (a) Hindi                      (b) English                      (c) Urdu                      (d) None of these

**Ans: (a) Hindi**

**14. How many languages are included in the Eight Schedule of the Indian Constitution?**

- (a) 15                      (b) 22                      (c) 25                      (d) 21

**Ans: (b) 22**

**15. Which language has status of the national language in India?**

- (a) Tamil                      (b) Hindi                      (c) English                      (d) None of these

**Ans: (d) None of these**

**ASSERTION AND REASON**

**DIRECTION: Mark the option which is most suitable:**

- (a) If both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.  
(b) If both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.  
(c) If assertion is true but reason is false.  
(d) If both assertion and reason are false.

16. Assertion: Belgium and Spain have 'holding together' federation.

Reason: A big country divides power between constituent states and national government.

**Ans: (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.**

17. Assertion: Hindi is identified as the only official language of India.

Reason: It helped in creating supremacy of Hindi speaking people over others.

**Ans: (c) Assertion is true but reason is false**

18. Assertion: Coalition government is formed during dearth of coal in the country.

Reason: It helps in overcoming coal crisis.

**Ans: (d) Both assertion and reason are false.**

[When no party is able to prove clear cut majority, several regional parties come together to form coalition government. It has no connection with scarcity of coal in the country.]

19. Assertion: The subjects which are not included in Union List, State List and Concurrent List are considered as residuary subjects.

Reason: The subjects included that came after constitution was made and thus could not be classified.

**Ans: (a)** Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

[The subjects which are not included in Union List, State List and Concurrent List are considered as Residuary subjects. It includes the subjects such as computer software that came after constitution was made. Union Government has power to legislate on these 'residuary' subjects.]

20. Assertion: Zilla Parishad Chairperson is the political head of the zilla parishad.

Reason: Mayor is the head of municipalities.

**Ans: (b)** Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion. [Panchayat samitis of a district together form the zilla parishad. Zilla Parishad chairperson is the political head of the Zilla Parishad. Municipalities are set up in towns. Mayor is the head of municipalities.]

### SHORT QUESTION ANSWER

(3 Marks)

#### 21. What are the different levels of government in Indian Federal system?

**Ans.** Federalism is a system of government in which the power is divided between a central authority and various constituent units of the country. A federation has two or more levels of government.

- i). The central Government- This is the government for the entire country and is usually responsible for a few subjects of common national interest.
- ii). State government- This is the government at the level of provinces or states that look after much of the day-to-day administering of their state. Both these levels of governments enjoy their power independent of the other.
- iii). The local government- This is the government at local level to meet the local needs and to ensure democratic participation at the grass root level.

#### 22. What is meant by unitary system?

**Ans:** i). Under the unitary system, either there is only one level of government or the sub-units are subordinate to the central government.

- ii) The central government can pass on orders to the provincial or the local government.
- iii) Generally small countries with less diversity adopt unitary system.

#### 23. Explain the terms of relationship between central government and state government in Federal system.

**Ans:** i). In a federal system, the central government cannot order the state government to do something.

- ii). State government has powers of its own for which it is not answerable to the central government.
- iii). Both these governments are separately answerable to the people.

#### 24. Why it is not easy to make changes to this power sharing arrangement in India?

**Ans :** i). The Parliament cannot on its own change the power sharing arrangement.

- ii). Any change to it has to be first passed by both the Houses of Parliament with at least two thirds majority.
- iii). Then it has to be ratified by the legislatures of at least half of the total States.

#### 25. What is the role of Judiciary in a Federation?

**Ans:** i) The judiciary plays an important role in overseeing the implementation of constitutional provisions and procedures in a Federal system.

ii) In case of any dispute about the division of powers, the High Courts and the Supreme Court make a decision.

iii) The Judiciary has to be behind dependent and impartial to ensure mutual trust between different levels of government and to uphold the spirit of Federalism.

**26. If the Federal experiment has succeeded in India, it is not merely because of the clearly laid out constitutional provisions. Do you agree with the statement? Justify your answer.**

- Ans:** i). Well defined and clear constitutional provisions have a major role in the success of Federal system but that is not enough.  
ii). The real success of Federalism can be attributed to the nature of democratic politics of our country  
iii). Respect for diversity and desire for living together became shared ideals in our country.

**27. How has the Panchayati Raj strengthened the democracy in India? Express your views.**

**Ans-**Panchayati Raj is the best example of decentralization of power.

- i) people can get most of the problems solved at the local level.  
ii) people can think and plan for themselves.

**28. State difference between the local government before and after the constitutional amendment in 1992.**

**Answer:** The difference of local government in India before and after 1992 was as mentioned below:

- (1) Panchayats and municipalities were directly under the control of the state governments. They did not enjoy independent status.
- (2) Elections to local bodies were not held regularly.
- (3) These bodies did not have financial resources. They were dependent on States & Central government.
- (4) There was no reservation for SC/ST/ OBGs.
- (5) There was no reservation for women.
- (6) There was no independent state commission to conduct elections. After 1992

[ Describe any three provisions of amendment made in 'Indian Constitution' in 1992 for making "Three-Tier government more effective and powerful]

- 1) The state governments are required to share some powers with the local government bodies. Now local bodies got constitutional status.
- (2) It is mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.
- (3) The state governments are required to share some powers with local government bodies.
- (4) Seats are reserved in the elected bodies for SC/ST/ OBGs.
- (5) One-third of all positions are reserved for women.
- (6) An independent State Election Commission has been created in each state to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.

**29. What is a Gram Sabha? Describe any two/four function of a Gram Sabha.**

**Ans-**Gram Sabha: A body comprising of all adult members of a village or a group of villages.

Function of Gram Sabha:

- i) It elects the members of the Gram Panchayat.
- ii) The Gram Sabha supervises the work of the Village Panchayat.
- iii) It approves the annual budget of the Panchayat.
- iv) It reviews the performance of the Gram Panchayat.

(Write any two or four according to the demand of question)

**30. Distinguish between Coming Together Federation and Holding Together Federation.**

**Ans:** Coming together Federations

1. Independent States coming together on their own to form a bigger unit.
2. This type is known as coming together federation. Ex. The USA, Switzerland and Australia.
- 3 All the constituent States have equal power and are strong.

Holding together federations

1. Large country decides to divide its power between States and Centre.
2. They are known as holding together federations Ex. India, Spain and Belgium
3. The central government tends to be more powerful than the States.

4. Constituent units of the federations have unequal power.

**Long Questions (5 MARKS )**

**31. What are the key features of federalism?**

- Ans :**
- i) There are two or more levels (or tiers) of government.
  - ii) Different tiers of government govern the same citizens, but each tier has its own Jurisdiction in specific matters of legislation, taxation and administration.
  - iii) The jurisdictions of the respective levels or tiers of government are specified in the constitution. So the existence and authority of each tier of government is constitutionally guaranteed.
  - iv) The fundamental provisions of the constitution cannot be unilaterally changed by one level of government. Such changes require the consent of both the levels of government.
  - v) Courts have the power to interpret the constitution and the powers of different levels of government.
  - vi) Sources of revenue for each level of government are clearly specified to ensure its financial autonomy.

**32. What factors make India a Federation?**

- Ans:**
- i) The Constitution originally provided for a two-tier system of government, the Union Government and the State governments.
  - ii) Later, a third tier of federalism was added in the form of Panchayats and Municipalities.
  - iii) These different tiers enjoy separate jurisdiction in specific matters of legislation, taxation and administration.
  - iv) The Constitution divides of legislative powers between the Union Government and the State Governments in three lists i.e. the union list. the state list and the concurrent list.
  - v) An independent and impartial judiciary exists to interpret the constitution and settles disputes.

**33. The existence of the Union Territories is a peculiar feature of Indian Federal system. Explain**

- Ans :**
- i) There are some units of the Indian Union which enjoy very little power.
  - ii) These are areas which are too small to become an independent State but which could not be merged with any of the existing States.
  - iii) There are historical, political and geographical reasons for their existence.
  - iv) These areas are called Union Territories.
  - v) These territories do not have the powers of a State.
  - vi) The Central Government has special powers in running these areas.

**34. Explain the Language policy of independent India**

- Ans:**
- i). Our Constitution does not give the status of national language to any one language.
  - ii). There are 22 official languages, including Hindi and English recognized as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution.
  - iii). A candidate in an examination conducted for the Central Government positions may opt to take the examination in any of these languages.
  - iv). The states too have their own official languages and that is their regional language.
  - v). According to the Constitution, the use of English for official purposes would stop in 1965 but many non-Hindi Speaking States demanded that the use of English should continue.
  - vi) Promotion of Hindi continues to be the policy the Government of India.
  - vii). Promotion does not mean that the Central Government can impose Hindi on States where people speak a different language.

**35. What are the steps or efforts taken in India for decentralization? /What are the clauses or provisions of the Decentralization Amendment Act of 1992?**

- Ans:**
- i) A major step towards decentralization was taken in 1992.
  - ii) The Constitution was amended to make the third-tier of democracy more powerful and effective.
  - iii) Now it is constitutionally mandatory to hold regular elections to local government bodies.

- iv) Seats are reserved in the elected bodies and the executive heads of these institutions for the Scheduled Castes, Scheduled Tribes and Other Backward Classes.
  - v). At least one-third of all positions are reserved for women.
  - vi). An independent institution called the State Election Commission has been created in each State to conduct panchayat and municipal elections.
  - vii). The State governments are required to share some powers and revenue with local government bodies.
- (Any five points)

**36. How is the rural local government constituted?/How does the rural local government function?**

- Ans:** i). Rural local government is popularly known by the name Panchayati raj. The nature of its constitution varies from State to State.
- ii). Each village has a gram panchayat with elected ward members, often called Panch, and a president or Sarpanch .
  - iii). The panchayat works under the overall supervision of the gram Sabha which includes all the voters in the village.
  - iv) It has to meet at least twice or thrice in a year to approve the annual budget of the gram panchayat and to review the performance of the gram panchayat.
  - v). A few gram panchayats are grouped together to form what is usually called a Panchayat Samiti or Block or Mandal.
  - vi) The members of this representative body are elected by all the Panchyat members in that area.
  - vii). All the panchayat Samitis or Mandals in a district constitute the Zilla (district) Parishad.

**SOURCE BASED QUESTION**

**(1+1+2=4)**

**37. Read the following extract and answer the questions**

A second test for Indian federation is the language policy. Our Constitution did not give the status of national language to any one language. Hindi was identified as the official language. But Hindi is the mother tongue of only about 40 percent of Indians. There were many safeguards to protect other languages. Besides Hindi, there are 21 other languages recognized as Scheduled Languages by the Constitution. A candidate in an examination conducted for the Central Government positions may opt to take the examination in any of these languages. States too have their own official languages. Much of the government work takes place in the official language of the concerned State. Unlike Sri Lanka, the leaders of our country adopted a very cautious attitude in spreading the use of Hindi. According to the Constitution, the use of English for official purposes would be stopped in 1965. However, many non- Hindi Speaking States demanded that the use of English should continue. In Tamil Nadu, this movement took a violent form. The Central Government responded by agreeing to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes. Many critics think that this solution favoured the English-speaking elites. Promotion of Hindi continues to be the official policy of the Government of India. Promotion does not mean that the Central Government can impose Hindi on States where people speak a different language. The flexibility shown by Indian political leaders helped our country avoid the kind of situation that Sri Lanka finds itself in.

**Q1. According to the Constitution, the use of English for official purposes would be stopped in 1965. But even now all official communication is given in English also. Why?**

**Ans-** Many Non- Hindi Speaking States demanded that the use of English should continue. The Central Government responded by agreeing to continue the use of English along with Hindi for official purposes.

**Q2. Suppose the Central Government orders all the state governments that the medium of instruction in schools should be Hindi. Is it constitutionally valid? Justify your answer.**

**Ans-** No, Central Government cannot impose Hindi on States where people speak a different language.

**Q3. It was proved that Sri Lanka lacked the political wisdom of adopting a proper Language policy as the country had to face a civil war on the issue of language. What was the main feature of Sri Lankan language policy?**

**Ans-** Sinhala language was given the status of the one and only official language of Sri Lanka disregarding Tamil.

## **Chapter 14. GENDER, RELIGION AND CASTE**

- Outcome of the politics of social division depends on some situations.
- Existence of social diversity does not threaten democracy

Gender and politics:

- Gender division tends to be understood as natural and unchangeable.
- Children are brought up to believe that women do the household work and bring up children.
- In most of the families work like cooking, cleaning, washing etc are done by women.
- Women are not valued for the work they do as it brings money to home.
- Earlier women were not allowed to take part in public affairs.
- Soon, women protested and demanded equal political rights, education and career opportunities.
- The protest converted to a movement which was further named 'Feminist movement'.

Result of discrimination:

1. literacy rate- literacy rate among girls is 65% whereas among boys is 82%.
2. unpaid work- in India, due to gender discrimination women are either not paid or are paid less.
3. sex ratio- child sex ratio in some regions has dropped down to 840.
4. domestic violence- women face exploitation and harassment. they are not even safe in their own home from beating.

women's political representation:

- Women demanded a share in elected bodies. 1/3 seats are reserved for women in Panchayati Raj.
- disadvantage groups to get benefit when social divisions get expressed in politics.

Religion and political relation:

- Religious social division is not as universal as gender but religious diversity is wide spread in the world today.
- many countries including India have in their population followers of different religion.
- Mahatma Gandhi said "Religion can never be separated from politics".
- Human Rights organisations also said that religious minorities should be protected by some special laws.
- Women have also demanded equal family laws for men and women.
- hence, it is very tough to separate religion from politics.

Communalism:

- when one religion is pitted against another by the political class this is called communalism.
- This happens when believes of 1 religion is presented superior to those of other religion.
- this kind of politics is known as communal politics.

forms of communalism:

- Prejudices and stereotypes make a mind communal, which demands religious dominance.
- some leaders use religion at the time of election. they make use of religious symbols ideas and believes to win.
- communal violence and riots are the most ugly form. Pakistan and India face faced this at time of partition.
- there is no official religion in India.
- Indian constitution give right to follow any religion with respect to all.

caste system and politics:

- In cast society occupations are passed on from one generation to other.

- With urbanization and economic development modern India has faced many changes.
- constitution of India prohibited any caste base discrimination.
- at the time of elections political parties choose their candidate from various caste groups to get support.
- Universal adult franchise and the one person one vote compelled political leaders to gear up to win support of all.

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

1. Which of the following statements are true regarding feminist movements?

- a) Radical women's movements aimed at equality in personal and family life.
- b) Agitations demanded enhancing the political and legal status of women and improving their educational and career opportunities.
- c) There were agitations in different countries for the extension of voting rights to women.
- d) All of the above.

**Answer: Option (d)**

2. Which of the following statements is true?

- a) Every social difference does not lead to social division.
- b) Social differences divide similar people from one another, but they also unite very different people.
- c) People belonging to different social groups share differences and similarities, cutting across the boundaries of their groups.
- d) All of the above.

**Answer: Option (d)**

3. Which of the following statements are true regarding communal politics?

- a) State power is used to establish the domination of one religious group over the rest.
- b) Beliefs of one religion are presented as superior to those of other religions.
- c) Communal politics is based on the idea that religion is the principal basis of a social community.
- d) All of the above.

**Answer: Option (d)**

4. \_\_\_\_\_ are those laws that deal with family-related matters such as marriage, divorce, adoption, inheritance, etc.

- a) Family laws
- b) Religious laws
- c) Community laws
- d) State laws

**Answer: Option (a)**

5. Which of the following statements is true?

- a) The Constitution of India allows the state to intervene in matters of religion in order to ensure equality within religious communities.
- b) Constitution prohibits discrimination on the grounds of religion.
- c) The Constitution provides to all individuals and communities freedom to profess, practise and propagate any religion or not to follow any.
- d) All of the above.

**Answer: Option (d)**

6. Which one of the following is not a cause of communalism?

- (a) Religion is taken as the basis of nation
- (b) When one religion is discriminated against other
- (c) State has no official religion
- (d) Demands of one religious group are formed in opposition to another

**Answer: Option(c)**

7. Match list I with list II

A. A person who believes in equal rights and opportunities for women and men.	I Communalist
B. Person who says that religion is the principal basis of	ii Feminist



community.	
C. A person who thinks that caste is the principal basis of community.	iii Secularist
D. A person who does on the not discriminate basis of other religious beliefs.	iv Castiest

- (a) A-iii B-ii C-i D- iv  
 (b) A-ii B- i C- iv D- iii  
 (c) A -iv B-iii C- ii D- i  
 (d) A- i B- iv C- iii D- ii

**Answer : Option (b)**

**8. What does the term ‘ Patriarchy’ mean?**

- (a) It means a system that demoralize men more than women  
 (b) It is a system which judge people’s opinion in every aspects of the society  
 ( c) It mean a system that values men more than women and gives them more power  
 (d ) None of these

**Answer : Option (c)**

**9. Which factors are responsible for miserable and poor conditions of women in India?**

- A. Sexual factors of labour  
 B. Illiteracy  
 C. Lack of representation in politics  
 D. Discrimination in jobs

- (a) Only A and C  
 (b) Only A,B and C  
 (c ) Only B,C and D  
 (d ) All A,B,C and D

**Answer: Option (d)**

**10. Consider the following statement and choose the correct option:**

- A. A common expression of communalism is the belief that that one religion is superior to all others.  
 B. Political mobilization on religious lines is a form of communalism.  
 (a) A is true but B is false  
 (b) A is false but B is true  
 ( c) Both A and B are true  
 (d ) Both A and B are false

**Answer: Option (c)**

**11. Consider the following statements on the meaning of communal**

politics. Communal politics is based on the belief that:

- A. One religion is superior to that of others.  
 B. People belonging to different religions can live together happily as equal citizens.  
 C. Followers of a particular religion constitute one community.  
 D. State power cannot be used to establish the domination of one religious group over others.

**Which of the statements is/are correct?**

- (a) A, B, C, and D (b) A, B, and D (c) A and C (d) B and D

**Answer: Option (c)**

**12. Heredity, rituals, birth are the basis of**

- (a) economic system  
 (b) caste system  
 (c) racial division  
 (d) class system

**Answer: Option (b)**

**13. When we speak of gender divisions, we usually refer to:**

- (a) Biological difference between men and women  
 (b) Unequal roles assigned by the society to men and women

- (c) Unequal child sex ratio
- (d) Absence of voting rights for women in democracies

Answer: Option (b)

**14. How have politics influenced caste system?**

- A. Selections of judges are influenced by Caste system and politics.
- B. the different sub caste system group comes together to become a large group, to bargain more for political benefits.
- C. cast consolidation has taken place under the name of backward and forward cast groups.
- D. Cast alliances for political struggle

**Which of the above statement is true?**

- (a) A and B
- (b) B,C and D
- (c) A,B and D
- (d) A,B and C

Answer: Option (b)

**15. What is the minimum percentage of reservation given to women at the local level of government?**

- (a)33%
- (b)43%
- (c)25%
- (d)51%

Answer: Option (a)

**16. What is the result of reservation of Women at the local level of government?**

- (a) more than 10000 elected women representatives in rural and urban local bodies
- (b) More than 1 lakh elected women representative in rural and urban local bodies
- (c) more than 10 lakh elected women representatives in rural and urban local bodies
- (d) more than 5 lakh elected women representatives in rural and urban local bodies

Answer: Option (c)

**17. What makes India a secular country?**

- A. all religions are equal.
- B. there is no official religion
- C. prohibits discrimination on religious grounds
- D. It reserves seats for religious minorities.

**Which of the statement is true?**

- (a)A,B and C
- (b)B and D
- (c)A and D
- (d)All the above

Answer: Option (a)

**18. Which among the following social reformers for against caste in equalities?**

Periyar Ramaswami Nayakar

B. R. Ambedkar

Raja Ram Mohan Roy

Jyotiba Phule

**Select the correct option:**

- (a)A,B and C
- (b)B and D
- (c)A, B and D
- (d)All the above

Answer: Option (c)

**19. A system that gives man more respect and more power over women is called:**

- (a)Matriarchy
- (b) Patriarchy
- (c) Federalist
- (d) communist

**Answer: Option (b)**

**20. Women's political representation in India is:**

- (a) The percentage of elected women members in lok sabha has never been more than 15% of its total strength.
- (b) Their share in the state assemblies is more than 15%.
- (c) Their share in the state assembly is less than 5%.
- (d) The percentage of elected women members in lok sabha has never been more than 20% of its total strength.

**Answer: option (c)**

**VERY SHORT ANSWER (2 marks)**

**21. Mention any two constitutional provisions that make India a Secular State.**

**Answer:** Two constitutional provisions that make India a Secular State are:

- i. There is no official religion for the Indian State. Unlike the status of Buddhism in Sri Lanka, Islam in Pakistan and Christianity in England, our Constitution does not give a special status to any religion.
- ii. At the same time, the Constitution allows the State to intervene in the matters of religion in order to ensure equality within religious communities; for example, it bans untouchability.

**22. Suggest any two steps to improve the women's participation in politics.**

- Answer:**
- (i) To make it legally binding to have a fair proportion of women in the elected bodies
  - (ii) By reserving some seats in the Lok Sabha and the State Assemblies for women.
  - (iii) Political parties should also give due representation to women members.
  - (iv) By raising the literacy rate.

**23. Describe the positive and negative aspects of relationship between caste and politics.**

- Answer:**
- (i) In some situations, expression of caste differences in politics gives many disadvantaged communities the space to demand their share of power.
  - (ii) In this sense, caste politics has helped people from the Dalits and the OBC castes to gain better access to decision making.

**24. Mention any negative role of caste in politics.**

- Answer:**
- (i) It disrupts social harmony.
  - (ii) It can divert attention from other pressing issues like poverty, corruption, etc.

**25. "Caste has not still disappeared from contemporary India". Give any two examples to justify the statement.**

- Answer:**
- (i) Even now most people marry within their own caste or tribe.
  - (ii) Untouchability has not ended completely despite constitutional prohibition.
  - (iii) Caste continues to be closely linked to economic status.

**26. What is sexual division of labour?**

**Answer:**

It is a term referring to the specialized gender roles of male bread winner and female housewife. In other words, it is a system in which all work inside the home is either done by the women of the family or organized by them through the domestic helpers and men do all the work outside the home.

**27. Which types of movements are called feminist movements?**

**Answer:**

The movements demanding enhancement in the political and legal status of women and improvement in their educational and career opportunities are called feminist movements.

**28. What does the concept of patriarchy refer to?**

**Answer:** Patriarchy is a concept which is based on male domination. It refers to a system that values men more and gives them power over women. As a result, women face disadvantage, discrimination and oppression in various ways.

**29. How did Gandhiji view religion and politics?**

**Answer:** According to Gandhiji, religion can never be separated from politics. What he meant by religion was not any particular religion like Hinduism or Islam but moral values that inform all religions. He believed that politics must be guided by ethics drawn from religion.

**30. What are family laws? OR What do family laws deal with?**

**Answer:**Family laws are those laws that deal with family related matters such as marriage, divorce, adoption, inheritance, etc.

**SHORT ANSWER TYPE (3 marks)**

**31. :‘Gender division is not based on biology but on social expectations and stereotypes’. Explain.**

**Answer:**It is a fact which can be reflected through the following arguments-

- (i) Boys and girls are brought up to believe that the main responsibility of women is house work and bringing up children.
- (ii) Women do all work inside the home such as cooking, washing clothes, etc. and men do all the work outside the home. This is reflected in the sexual division of labour in most families.
- (iii) It is not that men cannot do house work, they simply think that it is for women to do these things. Similarly, it is not that women do not work outside their home.
- (iv) In fact majority of women do some sort of paid work in addition to domestic labour. But their work is not valued.
- (v) We see a smaller proportion of girl students go for higher studies. When we look at school results, girls perform as well as boys, if not better in some places. But they drop out because their parents prefer to spend their resources on their boys’ education rather than spending equally on their sons and daughters. The motives of the parents behind this are clear. They think that girls will go to husband’s house after marriage while boys will stay back with them.

**32. ‘Political expression of gender division and political mobilisation on this question helped to improve women’s role in public life?’ Support the statement.**

**Answer:**Yes, these factors have definitely improved women’s status in public domain. They can be seen in almost all fields.

- We now find women working as scientists, doctors, engineers, lawyers, managers and colleges and university teachers which were earlier not considered suitable for women.
- In some parts of the world such as Sweden, Norway and Finland, the participation of women in public life is very high.

**33. “The Government of India gives holidays for the festivals of most of the religions.” Why is it so? Give your viewpoint.**

**Answer:**The Government of India gives all religious holidays because India is a secular state. Certain provisions were adopted in the Constitution to make India a secular state:

- i. There is no official religion for the Indian State. Unlike the status of Buddhism in Sri Lanka and Islam in Pakistan, our Constitution does not give a special status to any religion.
- ii. The Constitution provides to all individuals and communities freedom to profess, practice and propagate any religion or not to follow any.
- iii. The Constitution prohibits discrimination on the grounds of religion.
- iv. Constitution allows the State to intervene in the matters of religion in order to ensure equality within religious communities, for example, it bans untouchability.

**34. How have caste and the caste system undergone changes in modern India? OR Explain the socio-economic changes responsible for breaking down the old notion of caste hierarchy in India.**

**Answer:**

- i) Social reformers like Jotiba Phule, Mahatma Gandhi, and Periyar Ramaswamy Naicker have carried out movements to end caste inequalities.
- ii) Economic development and urbanization have broken caste hierarchies in India.
- iii) Growth of literacy and education, as well as occupational mobility, have also changed the mindset of people towards caste.
- iv) The Constitution of India prohibits caste-based discrimination.
- v) Practicing untouchability is a punishable offense in India.

**35. Explain the status of women’s representation in India’s legislative bodies.**

**Answer:**The one way to ensure that women related problems get adequate attention is to have more women as elected representatives. To achieve this, it is legally binding to have a fair proportion of women in the elected bodies.

- i) Panchayati Raj in India has reserved one-third seats in Local Government bodies for women.

- ii) In India, the proportion of women in legislature has been very low. The percentage of elected women members in Lok Sabha is not even 10 per cent and in State Assemblies less than 5 per cent. India is behind several developing countries of Africa and Latin America. Women organisations have been demanding reservations of at least one-third seats in Lok Sabha and State Assemblies for women.
- iii) And only recently, in March 2010, the women's reservation bill was passed in the Rajya Sabha ensuring 33% reservation to women in Parliament and State Legislative bodies.

**36. Explain the various forms that caste can take in politics.**

**Answer:**

Various forms of caste in politics:

- i) When governments are formed, political parties usually take care that representatives of different castes and tribes find a place in it.
- ii) When parties choose candidates, they keep in mind the composition of the electorate and accordingly choose candidates from different castes so as to muster necessary support to win elections.
- iii) Political parties make appeals to caste sentiments to gain support. Some political parties are known to favour some caste
- iv) Universal adult franchise and the principle of one-person-one-vote compelled political leaders to mobilise political support. It also brought new consciousness among people belonging to those castes which were treated as inferiors.

**37. Discuss any four facilities are given by the government to the backward classes.**

**Answer:** The people from the backward classes have been given reservation in the government jobs as per their proportion in the population.

- (i) To give them fair representation in the Vidhan Sabha and the Lok Sabha.
- (ii) To help them move forward in the field of higher education. The seats have been reserved for them.
- (iii) The constitution also prohibits any type of caste discrimination.

**38. Discuss any four steps taken by the government towards women empowerment and gender inequality.**

**Answer:** Women have less than 10% representation in the Indian legislature. In the State legislature their representation is even less than 5%.

- (i) The provision of equal wages for women without any discrimination has been made under the Equal Wages Act.
- (ii) There is a tendency of female infanticide in many parts of the country. Domestic violence against women, their exploitation etc. always have been the part of daily news. In this regard, the government has brought Domestic Violence Act which proves and effective steps.

**39. "Every social difference does not lead to social division." Justify the statement.**

**Answer:** Every social difference does not lead to social division due to following reasons:

- (i) Social differences may divide similar people from one another but they also unite very different people. For example, Carlos and Smith were similar to each other as they were Afro- American but they were different from Norman who was white.
- (ii) It is easier to accommodate cross cutting differences. For example, the Catholics and Protestants had some social differences but later they were able to patch up the differences. This did not result in social divisions.
- (iii) It is also possible for people from different religions to have the same cast and field close to each other.

**40. What was Gandhiji's view on religion and politics? Explain.**

**Answer:** Gandhiji had the following views on religion and politics:

- i) Gandhiji believed that religion can never be separated from politics.
- ii) He meant that moral values of all religion such as Hinduism or Islam or Christianity affect politics.
- iii) He believed that politics must be guided by ethics drawn from religion but not on religion.

**41. How far is it correct to say that it is not politics that gets caste ridden but it is the caste that gets politicised? Explain.**

**Answer:** Politics too influences the caste system and caste identities by bringing them into the political arena. This takes several forms:

- i) Each caste group tries to become bigger by incorporating within itself neighbouring castes or sub castes.
- ii) Various caste groups enter into a coalition with other castes for negotiations.
- iii) New caste groups like 'backward' and 'forward' have come up in the political arena.
- iv) Expressions of caste differences in politics give many disadvantaged communities the chance to demand their share of power and thus gain access to decision-making.
- v) Many political and non-political organizations have been demanding and agitating for an end to discrimination against particular castes for more dignity and more access to land, resources and opportunities.

**42. Explain the factors that have led to the weakening of the caste system in India.**

**Answer:** Reasons which have contributed to changes in caste system:

- i) Efforts of political leaders and social reformers like Gandhiji, B.R. Ambedkar who advocated and worked to establish a society in which caste inequalities are absent.
- ii) Socio-economic changes such as:
  - urbanization
  - growth of literacy and education
  - occupational mobility
  - weakening of landlord's position in the village
  - breaking down of caste hierarchy have greatly contributed.
- iii) The Constitution of India prohibited any caste-based discrimination and laid the foundations of policies to reverse the injustices of the caste system.
- iv) Provision of fundamental rights has played a major role because these rights are provided to all citizens without any discrimination.

**43. What was the Feminist Movement? Explain the political demands of the Feminist Movement in India.**

**Answer:** Feminist Movements are radical women's movements aiming at attaining equality for women in personal and family life and public affairs. These movements have organised and agitated to raise channels for enhancing the political and legal status of women and improving their educational and career opportunities.

Political demands of the feminist movement in India:

The one way to ensure that women related problems get adequate attention in India is to have more women as elected representatives. To achieve this, it is legally binding to have a fair proportion of women in the elected bodies. Panchayati Raj in India has reserved one-third seats in Local Government bodies for women.

In India, the proportion of women in legislature has been very low. The percentage of elected women members in Lok Sabha is not even 10 per cent and in State Assemblies less than 5 per cent. India is behind several developing countries of Africa and Latin America. Women organizations have been demanding reservations of at least one-third seats in Lok Sabha and State Assemblies for women.

And only recently, in March 2010, the women's reservation bill was passed in the Rajya Sabha ensuring 33 per cent reservation for women in Parliament and State Legislative bodies.

**44. Why are caste barriers breaking down in India? Explain any five reasons.**

**Answer:** In the recent decades, caste barriers have been breaking down in India because of the following reasons.

- i) It has been the efforts of social reformers that people have realised the caste-based differences had no logic.
- ii) The economic development, large scale urbanisation and occupational mobility has further erased the caste barriers.

iii) Spread of literacy and education has also played a great role in upgrading the beliefs and ideologies of the people.

iv) Complete eradication of landlordism has resulted in the decline of caste system.

v) The constitutional provision of prohibiting caste-based discriminations in every form and providing equal opportunities to all has reversed the caste injustices.

**45. “All over the world, people express their dissatisfaction with the failure of political parties to perform their functions well. Analyse the statement with arguments.**

**Answer:** The given statement is analysed with the help of the following arguments:

i) No party wins the votes of all the voters of a caste or community because even within the community people vote on the basis of performance and not on the basis of caste.

ii) Most of the political parties may put up candidates from the majority cast. but even this does not ensure their victory. The candidates belonging to the majority caste can lose if their performance is not up to the mark.

iii) According to the history of Indian elections, the ruling party and the sitting member of the Parliament (MP) or member of the Legislative Assembly (MLA) frequently loses elections in our country. This proves that votes are given on the basis of performance.

iv) all over the world similar Trends are observed. only that political party comes to power which performs for the Welfare of the people.

v) In many parties' top positions are always held by members of one family. Most political parties do not practice transparent and open procedures for their functioning.

**46. How can caste take several forms in politics? Explain with examples.**

**Answer:** Various forms of caste in politics are as follows:

i) When governments are formed, political parties usually take care that representatives of different caste and tribes find a place in it.

ii) When parties choose candidates, they keep in mind the composition of the electorate and accordingly choose candidates from different castes so as to muster necessary support to win elections.

iii) Political parties make appeals to caste sentiments to gain support. Some political parties are known to favour some castes.

iv) Universal adult franchise and the principle of one person one vote compelled political leaders to mobilise political support.

v) It also brought new consciousness to people belonging to those caste which were treated as inferiors.

**Source based questions**

**(1+1+2=4)**

**47. Read the source given below and answer the questions:**

In India, the proportion of women in the legislature has been very low. for example , The percentage of elected women members in lok sabha has touched 14.36% of its total strength for the first time in 2019. Their share in the state assemblies is less than 5%. In this respect, India is among the bottom group of nations in the world. India is behind the averages for several developing countries of Africa and Latin America. In the government, cabinets are largely all male even when a woman becomes the Chief Minister or the Prime Minister.

One way to solve this problem is to make it legally binding to have a fair proportion of women in the elected bodies. This is what the Panchayati Raj has done in India. One third of seats in local government bodies- in Panchayat and municipalities- are now reserved for women. Now, there are more than 10 lakh elected women representatives in rural and urban local bodies.

**1. What was the share of elected women members in the state assembly in 2019?**

**Answer:** 5%

**2. Since the Panchayati Raj has been done in India, what is the proportion of seats reserved for women in local government bodies?**

**Answer:** one third seats reserved for women in local government bodies.

**3. Why was the Panchayati Raj done in India?**

**Answer:** to have a fair proportion of women in the elected bodies.

## Chapter 15. Political Parties

### **Partisan-**

A person who strongly believe in a party or a group .A person become unable to take balance decision on any issue .The person always support his party.

### **Ruling party -**

The winning party in the election who form and run the government.

### **Opposition Party-**

The losing party who does not form the government but check and criticize the actions and policies of ruling party.

### **Alliance or Front-**

When several parties joins hand together for contesting election and winning power. They are called as alliance or front. This happens in a country with multi party system. Examples of alliance or front are UPA, NDA and Left Front in India.

**Recognition of political party-** Election Commission of India recognizes political parties as per following guidelines or criteria.

### **State party-**

When a party secure at least 6% votes to the total votes in election to legislative assembly and wins at least 2 seats, then it is recognized as state party.

### **National Party-**

A party with secure at least 6% of the total votes in the Lok Sabha election or assembly election in four states and wins at least 4 seats in the Lok Sabha it is recognizes as national party.

### **Classification of party system**

1. **Single party system-** only single party is allowed to control and run the government. Ex. China.
2. **Two party system or Bi- party system-** several parties mainly exist and have seeds in state legislation but only two main parties win the majority. Ex.- USA, UK
3. **Multi-party system** more than two parties may come to power on its own or in alliance. Ex.- India.

### **Functions of political parties:-**

- (a) Parties contest election-
- (b) Parties put forward different policies and programs
- (c) makes laws for the country
- (d) Parties form and run government
- (e) Parties play the role of opposition
- (f) Parties shape public opinion
- (g) They provide people access to government machinery and welfare schemes.

### **Challenges to political parties:**

1. Lack of internal democracy within parties.
2. The challenge of dynastic succession.
3. The growing role of money and muscle power in parties, especially during elections.
4. Parties do not seem to offer a meaningful choice to the voters.

### **Ways to reform political parties in India: -**

1. Regulation of party's internal affairs: A law should be made to regulate the internal affairs of political parties. It should be made compulsory for political parties to maintain a register of their members, to follow their own constitution, to have an independent authority, etc.
2. Ensure women's participation: It should be made mandatory for political parties to give a minimum number of tickets, about one-third, to women candidates.
3. State funding: There should be state funding of elections. The government should give money to parties to support their election expenses to avoid corruption.



4. The pressure of public opinion: Political parties can be reformed if people put pressure on them. This can be done through petitions, propaganda, and agitations. Pressure groups and media play an important role in this.
5. Public participation: Political parties can improve if those who want this join political parties. The quality of democracy depends on the degree of public participation.

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

**1. Bharatiya Janata Party believes in the Philosophy of:**

- (A) Cultural nationalism. (B) Religion above all.  
 (C) No discrimination on the basis of caste. (D) Equal opportunity for all.

**Ans. Option (A)**

**2. Who among the following is the founder of the Bahujan Samaj Party?**

- (A) Kanshi Ram (B) B. R. Ambedkar  
 (C) Shahu Maharaj (D) Jyotiba Phule

**Ans. Option (A)**

**Directions: In the following questions, A statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:**

- (A) Both A and R are true, and R is the correct explanation of A.  
 (B) Both A and R are true but R is NOT the correct explanation of A.  
 (C) A is true but R is false.  
 (D) A is false and R is true.

**3) Assertion (A): Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country.**

**Reason (R): Opposition parties also mobilize opposition to the government.**

**Ans. Option (B)**

**4) Assertion (A): In India there is parliamentary form of Government**

**Reason (R): the Indian parliament have bicameral system**

**Ans. Option (B)**

**5. Who among the following gives recognition to political parties in India?**

- (a) Speaker of Lok Sabha (b) President of India (c) Supreme Court (d) Election Commission

**Ans: (d) Election Commission**

**6. An example of a country where two-party system exists**

- (a) India (b) United Kingdom (c) China (d) Pakistan

**Answer: (b) United Kingdom**

**7. Trinamool congress is a regional party of Odisha. (True/False)**

**Answer: False**

**8. Define 'Partisan'.**

**Answer:** A person strongly committed to a party, group or faction is called partisan.

**9. Define multiparty system.**

**Answer:** A political system where more than two parties exist and contest elections to come to power.

**10. The Constitution was amended to stop \_\_\_\_\_ .**

**Answer:** defection

**11. The UK and USA have \_\_\_\_\_ party system.**

**Answer:** two party

**12. Those parties that lose in the elections.....**

- A. Can still run the government B. Play the role of opposition  
 C. Can make policies and programs D. Cannot criticize the government

**Answer: - (B)**

**13. Which party is the oldest political party in India?**

- A. Indian National Congress (INC)                      B. Bahujan Samaj Party  
C. Bhartiya Janta Party                                      D. Communist Party

**Answer: - (A)**

**14. What is an alliance?**

**Ans.**When several parties join hands to contest elections.

**15. Match List I (organizations and struggles) with List II and select the correct answer using the codes given below the lists:**

**List-I**

- (1) Congress Party  
(2) Bharatiya Janata Party  
(B) State party  
(3) Communist Party of India (Marxist)  
(4) Telugu Desam Party

**List-II**

- (A) National democratic Alliance  
(C) United Progressive Alliance  
(D) Left Front

Codes:(i) (ii) (iii) (iv)

- (a) C A B D  
(b) C D A B  
(c) C A D B  
(d) D C A B

**Ans-option (c)- (i) C, (ii) A, (iii) D, (iv) B.**

**16. Which coalition alliance was formed by BJP?**

**Answer:** National Democratic Alliance (NDA)

**17. Communist Party of India (CPI) was formed in the year .....**

- (A) 1925                      (B) 1964                      (C) 1980                      (D) 1885

**Answer: - (A)**

**Q. 18. Which one of the following countries has Mono Party system?**

- (A) Russia                      (B) China                      (C) Japan                      (D) Germany

**Answer: - (B)**

**19. Find the incorrect options:**

- (A)Every party in the country has to register with the Election Commission.  
(B) state party cannot participate in parliamentary election.  
(C)These parties are given an ordinary symbol  
(D) in India there is multi-party system

**Ans. Option (B)**

**20. What do you mean by a political party?**

**Ans.-** A political party is a group of people who come together to contest election and hold power in the country.

**Very short answer type questions(2 marks )**

**21. What is a Bi-party system?**

**Answer:** In some countries, power usually changes between two main parties. Such a party system is called bi-party system. E.g., UK and USA.

**22.Why did India adopt multi-party system?**

**Answer:** (i) India is a large country and has social and geographical diversities.  
(ii) It is easy to absorb different diversities in a multi-party system

**23.What is an ‘alliance’ or a ‘front’?**

**Answer:** When several parties in a multi-party system join hands for the purpose of contesting elections and winning power, it is called an alliance or a front.

**24. What is 'defection'?**

**Answer:** Changing party allegiance from the party on which a person got elected (to a legislative body) to a different party.

**Short Answer type questions**

**(3 marks)**

**25. What are the components of a political party?**

**Answer:** (i) The leaders: The leaders contest elections and, if they win, perform the administrative jobs.  
(ii) The active members: The active members attend party meetings and are close to the party leaders. They can be called the assistants of the leaders.  
(iii) The followers: The followers are dedicated workers of the party. They work under the able guidance of the active members.

**26. What is the difference between a national party and a state party?**

**Answer:** There are three major differences between a national party and regional/state party:  
(i) National parties have influence all over the country or in several states of India. The influence of a state party is limited to a state or region.  
(ii) National parties take interest in national as well as international issues; whereas regional or state parties are interested in promoting regional/state interest only.  
(iii) The national parties have to harmonise the national as well as state interests; whereas state parties usually stand for greater autonomy for states.

**27. Explain the different kinds of party system in politics.**

**Answer:** There are three kinds of party system in politics-  
(i) One-party System- In some countries only one party is allowed to control and run the government. These are called one-party systems. In China, only the communist party is allowed to rule.  
(ii) Two Party System- In some countries, power usually changes between two main parties, such a party system is called two party system. The United States of America and the United Kingdom are examples of two-party system.  
(iii) Multi-party System- If several parties compete for power and more than two parties have a reasonable chance of coming to power either of their own strength or in alliance with others, we call it a multi-party system.

**28. Examine the advantages of two-party system.**

**Ans:**(I) Stable government -the government in this party system would be very stable as it comes to power by a majority.  
(II) Strong opposition-in this party system the position of opposition party is very strong and effective as there is only one party from the opposition.  
(III) Responsible government- this system best reconciles responsiveness with order and representative government with effective governance.

**29. How do money and muscle power play an important role in elections? Explain.**

**Answer:**(i) They try to select or nominate those candidates who can raise money or provide muscle power.  
(ii) Sometimes, wealthy people and big companies also get involved in the democratic politics for their own interest and influence decision-making process.  
(iii) In many cases, candidates with criminal records, who can win elections, are supported.

**30. Serious efforts were made by the legal organizations to reform political parties in India." Support the statement.**

**Answer:**(i) The Supreme Court has made it mandatory for the candidates contesting elections to produce an affidavit giving details of property and cases pending against them.  
(ii) Anti-defection law has been passed by amending the constitution to prevent elected MLAs and MPs from changing their parties.  
(iii) The Election Commission has made it mandatory for the political parties to hold organizational elections and file their income tax returns.

**31. How is dynastic succession a major challenge for political parties in India? Explain.**

- Answer:** (i) Usually, an ordinary worker does not rise to the top positions in a party because the functioning of most political parties is not transparent.
- (ii) Most of the top leaders favor and choose members of their families. This is unfair to other members.
- (iii) The top positions are always controlled by members of one family. This is unhealthy for democracy.

**Long answer type questions- (5 marks)**

**32. State the conditions laid down by the Election Commission to recognize a state party and a national party.**

- Ans:**(i) A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in an election to the legislative assembly of a state and wins at least two seats is recognized as a state party.
- (ii) A party that secures at least six per cent of the total votes in Lok-Sabha elections or assembly elections in four states and wins at least four seats in the Lok Sabha is recognized as a national party.

**33. What are the Functions of a political party?**

- Ans:** (i) Parties contest elections.
- (ii) Parties put forward different policies and programs and the voters choose from them.
- (iii) Parties play a decisive role in making laws for a country.
- (iv) Parties form and run governments.
- (v) Those parties that lose in the elections play the role of opposition to the parties in power, by voicing different views and criticizing the government for its failures or wrong policies.
- (vi) Parties shape public opinion. They raise and highlight issues.
- (vii) Parties provide people access to government machinery and welfare schemes implemented by governments.

**34. Suggest and explain any five ways to reform political parties in India.**

**Ans.** Suggestions to reform political parties in India:

- (i) Regulation of party's internal affairs: A law should be made to regulate the internal affairs of political parties. It should be made compulsory for political parties to maintain a register of their members, to follow their own constitution, to have an independent authority, etc.
- (ii) Ensure women's participation: It should be made mandatory for political parties to give a minimum number of tickets, about one-third, to women candidates.
- (iii) State funding: There should be state funding of elections. The government should give money to parties to support their election expenses to avoid corruption.
- (iv) The pressure of public opinion: Political parties can be reformed if people put pressure on them. This can be done through petitions, propaganda, and agitations. Pressure groups and media play an important role in this.
- (v) Public participation: Political parties can improve if those who want this join political parties. The quality of democracy depends on the degree of public participation.

**35. Explain the functions of the opposition parties.**

**Ans.** Functions of the opposition parties:

- (i) They oppose the government by voicing different views.
- (ii) They criticize the government for its failure and wrong policies.
- (iii) They mobilize opposition to the government.
- (iv) Opposition parties safeguard the liberty and rights of people by monitoring the activities of the ruling party.
- (v) It keeps a check on the dictatorial behavior of the ruling party.

**36. How do state or regional political parties contribute in strengthening federalism and democracy in India? Explain with examples.**

**Answer:** State and regional political parties contribute in strengthening federalism and democracy in India in the following ways.

- (i) They provide a variety of choice to people as each of them has different agendas and focus on different issues.
- (ii) They provide a platform for different pressure and social groups, and communities to put forward their demands.
- (iii) They help in power sharing by sharing power of government with the help of coalition government.

**37. No party system is ideal for all countries and all situations.' Justify the statement with arguments.**

**Answer:** No party system is ideal for all countries and all situations. This statement can be justified giving the following arguments.

- (i) A one-party system cannot be considered a good option because the voters do not have any choice and it is not a democratic option.
- (ii) A two-party system cannot be considered ideal for a country because in this system, power usually shifts from one party to the other. Several other parties with better programs and policies may exist, contest elections and win a few seats, but only the two party have serious chance of forming government.
- (iii) A multiparty system also cannot be considered a good option because it often appears messy and leads to political instability. In this system the government is formed by various parties and ideologies coming together which may further raise issues and conflicts.

**38. Illustrate the situations which display a lack of internal democracy within a political party.**

**Ans.** Situations that display a lack of internal democracy within a political party are:

- (i) Parties do not keep membership registers, do not hold organizational meetings, and do not conduct internal elections regularly.
- (ii) Ordinary members of the party do not get sufficient information on what happens inside the party.
- (iii) They do not have the means or the connections needed to influence the decisions. As a result, the leaders assume greater power to make decisions in the name of the party.
- (iv) Since one or few leaders exercise paramount power in the party, those who disagree with the leadership find it difficult to continue in the party.
- (v) More than loyalty to party principles and policies, personal loyalty to the leader becomes more important.

**39. Why do modern democracies could not exist without political parties?**

**Answer:** (i) We can understand the necessity of political parties by imagining a situation without parties.

Every candidate in the elections will be independent. So, no one will be able to make any promises to the people about any major policy changes.

(ii) Elected representatives will be accountable to their constituencies for what they do in the locality. But no one will be responsible for how the country runs.

(iii) India also has non-party based elections to the panchayats in many states. Although parties do not contest formally, it is generally noticed that the village splits into more than one faction, each of which puts up a 'panel' of its candidates. This is exactly what the party does. That is why, we have political parties in almost all the countries in the world.

(iv) The rise of political parties is directly linked to the emergence of representative democracies. Large-scale societies need representative democracy.

**40. What is the role of an ordinary citizen in reforming the political parties?**

**OR**

**Examine critically the role of an ordinary citizen in strengthening and deepening democracy.**

**Answer:** (i) People can put pressure on political parties. This can be done through petitions, publicity, and agitations. Ordinary citizens, pressure groups, movements and the media can play an important role.

(ii) In a democracy, everybody has been given the right to speak, right to express his ideas and right to agitate.

(iii) Political parties can improve if those who are interested, also join the political parties. The quality of

democracy depends on the degree of public participation.

(iv) If political parties feel that they would lose public support by not taking up reforms, they would become more serious about reforms.

(V) It is difficult to reform politics if ordinary citizens do not take part in it.

### **Case Study/Passage Based Questions**

**41. Read the source given below and answer the questions that follows: (1+1+2=4)**

A Political Party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government. They agree on some policies and programs for the society with a view to promote the collective good. Since there can be different views on what is good for all, Parties tried to persuade people why their policies are better than others. They see to implement these policies by winning popular support through elections. Parties reflect fundamental political division in a society. Parties are about a part of the society and thus involves partisanship.

Thus, a party is known by which part it stands for, which policy it supports and whose interest it upholds.

Answer the following questions: -

**(a) What is the meaning of a political party?**

**Ans.** A Political Party is a group of people who come together to contest elections and hold power in the government

**(b) Give one feature of a political party.**

**Ans.** Political parties contest election and form the government.

**(c) What are the three components of a political parties?**

**Ans.** A Political party has three components-

\*The leaders.

\* The active members and

\* The followers.

## **Chapter 16. OUTCOMES OF DEMOCRACY**

- 1. Democracy:** -A system in which the government of a country is elected by the people.
- 2. Accountable:**- required or expected to justify actions or decisions; responsible.
- 3. Legitimate Government:** - A government generally acknowledge as being in control of a nation and deserving formal recognition, which is symbolised by the exchange of diplomats between that government and the governments of other countries.
- 4. Deliberation:** - long and careful discussion.
- 5. Negotiation:** -Discussion aimed at reaching an agreement.
- 6. Dictator:** - A ruler with total power over a country, a typical one, who has obtained control by force.
- 7. Disparities:** - A great difference.
- 8. Social diversity:**-People with different opinions, backgrounds (degrees and social experiences), religious beliefs, political beliefs, sexual orientations, heritage, and life experience.
- 9. Majority:** - A great number.
- 10. Minority:** - The smaller number or part, specially a number or part representing less than half of the whole.
- 11. Dignity:**-The state or quality of being worthy of honour or a respect.
- 12. Atrocity:** - An extremely wicked or cruel act, typically one involving physical violence or injury.
- 13. Civil liberties:** - Civil liberties are rights and privileges of the peoples which are considered necessary for the functioning of democracy.
- 14. Dictatorship:** - It is a form of government in which the power of government is in the hands of one person or one party.\
- 15. Outcomes means:** -Results – Successes or failures or democracy.

**16. Rule of law:** - It means that everyone is equal in the eyes of law and no one is above the law .Anyone violating law will get the same punishment irrespective of his official or financial status.

**17. Transparency:-** It means that a citizen can know about the process of decision making

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

**1. Which of the following is true with respect to democracy?**

- a) It reduces economic inequality.
- b) It guarantees economic development
- c)It is an accountable, responsive and legitimate government.
- d) It has a higher rate of economic growth.

Ans- (c)I t is an accountable, responsive and legitimate government.

**2. Which of the following is often missing from a non-democratic government?**

- a) Transparency b) Economic equality c) Higher economic growth rate d) All of the above

Ans-(a) Transparency

**3. On which of the issues most of the democracies have failed?**

- i) Right to vote      ii) political equality      iii) corruption      iv) removal of poverty
- a) Only (i) and (ii)      b) only (ii) and (iii)      c) Only (iii) and (iv)      d) All of the above

Ans- (c) Only (iii) and (iv)

**4. Which of the following is the most basic outcome of democracy?**

- a). It provides a government that is accountable to the citizens, and
- b) It creates economic equality.
- c) Its leaders to better economic growth rate.
- d) It reduces inequality in Income.

Ans- (a) It provides a government that is accountable to the citizens, and

**5. In which of the following countries is democracy not preferred over dictatorship?**

- a) India      b) Pakistan      c) Bangladesh      d) Sri Lanka

Ans- (b) Pakistan

**6. If the government provides its citizens a right and means to examine the process of decision making, it is known as-**

- a) a transparent government      b) a responsible government
- c) a legitimate government      d) a stable government

Ans-(a) a transparent government

**7. What does a legitimate government mean?**

- a) A legally chosen government
- b) A government where the people have the right to know the decisions.
- c) A government that fights against illiteracy.
- d) A government that reduces economic inequality.

Ans- (a) A legally chosen government

**8. Which one of the following a democracy need not provide?**

- a) Legitimacy      b) Accountability
- c) Responsiveness      d) Religious alternatives

Ans- (d) Religious alternatives

**9. Consider the following statements.**

- (a) In recent past, all dictatorial regimes have slightly higher rate of economic growth.
- (b) All democratic regimes have better economic growth than dictatorship.

Which of the above statements is/are correct?

- 1. (a) only      2. (b) Only      3. Both a and b      4. Neither a or b

Ans-1. (a )only

**10. A government that is attentive to the needs and demands of the people is termed as:**

- a) An accountable government
- b) A transparent government
- c) A responsive government
- d) A legitimate government

**Ans- (c)** A responsive government

**11. Assertion and reason**

In the question given below there are two statements marked as Assertion (A) and Reason (R) Read the statement and choose the correct option.

- (a) Both A and R are true, and R is correct explanation of A
- (B) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A
- (C) A is correct but R is wrong
- (d) A is wrong but R is true

Assertion (A) there is more economic growth in democratic countries

Reason (R) Democratic government is people's own government

**Ans (D)** A is wrong but R is true

**12. Which country in south Asia has successfully negotiated among different ethnic population?**

- (A) India
- (B) srilanka
- (C) Belgium
- (D) Netherlands

**Ans -(C)** Belgium

**13. Which form of government stands much superior to any other form in promoting dignity and freedom of the individuals?**

- a) Dictatorship
- b) democracy
- c) monarchy
- d) autocracy

**Ans- (B)** democracy

**14. Studies of political and social in inequality in democracies shown that**

- a) Democracy and development go together
- b) in inequalities exist in democracy
- c) Inequalities do not exist under dictatorship
- d) dictatorship in better than democracy

**Ans (C)** Inequalities do not exist under dictatorship

**15. What is transparency?**

- a) The right and means to examine the progress of decision taken
- b) Representatives are responsible to the people
- c) It is the ruled by majority
- d) Taking care of citizens dignity and respect

**Ans- (A)** The right and means to examine the progress of decision taken

**16. A democratic government is one which fulfills one of the following conditions**

- a) It is an accountable government
- b) it is a legitimate government
- c) It is a responsible government
- d) all the above

**Ans- (d)** all the above

**17. People should be vigilant and participate actively in the process of-**

- a) Representation
- b) Governance
- c) Choosing party
- d) All the above

**Ans-(d)** All the above

**18. In which field is the achievement of dictatorship better than that of democracy?**

- a) Education field
- b) economic field
- c) in the field of defence
- d) national unity

**Ans -(b)** economic field

**19. The idea of deliberation and negotiation in a democracy leads to which of the following?**

- a) Quick and hasty decisions
- b) Conflict between social groups
- c) Some delay in decision making
- d) Chances of political domination

**Ans -(c)** Some delay in decision making

**20. Which of the following statements about democracy is not true?**

- a) It always worries about majority and public opinion
- b) It often improves the quality of decision making
- c) In this decision making is faster and quicker



d)It always allows a room to correct its mistake

**Ans- (c)** In this decision making is faster and quicker

### **Very short answer type questions (2 marks)**

**21. Democratic government is a better choice justify by giving two reasons**

**Ans-** (i) It promotes equality among citizens.

(ii) As decisions are taken by following a procedure so it improves the quality of decision making.

**22. Define accountable government.**

**Ans -** Any government which follows procedure for all the decisions and is answerable to the citizens for all its decisions.

**23. Non-democratic rulers are very quick and efficient in decision making and implementation. Give reason.**

**Ans-** Non- democratic rulers do not have to bother about deliberation in assemblies or worry about majorities and public opinion.

**24.” Democratic government is a transparent government”. Do you agree justify.**

**Ans-** Democratic government is a transparent government because the people have the right and means to examine the process of decision making.

**25. Define legitimate government.**

**Ans-** The government under which laws and actions are revealed to the people in a public manner, not kept secret from them.

**26. Who are the real rulers in a democracy?**

**Ans –** The voters are the real rulers in the democracy.

**27. What do you understand by rule by majority?**

**Ans –** Ruled by majority means that in case of every decision or in case of every election, different person and groups may and can form a majority.

**28. Why system is best suited to negotiate the differences?**

**Ans –** Democracy is best suited to negotiate the differences.

**29. Why do democracies lay emphasis in providing dignity and freedom to the individuals?**

**Ans –** This is because, democratic are government by the people, of the people and for the people.

**30. What is meant by dignity and freedom of the citizens?**

**Ans –** Dignity and freedom of the citizens refers to the respect from fellow beings, equal treatment of all citizens and individuals’ freedom in the society.

### **Short answer questions (3 marks)**

**31. What is the most basic outcome of democracy?**

**Ans –** The most basic outcome democracy should be that it produces a government that is accountable to the citizens, and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens.

**32. Mention any two limitations of democracy.**

**Ans – (i)** (a) It always worries about majorities and public opinion.

(b) It delays its decisions.

(ii) Under democracy a citizen who wants to know if a decision taken by the government was taken through the correct procedures can find this out. She has the right and the means to examine the process of decision making. This is known as transparency.

**33. Democratic government is a legitimate government, Explain.**

**Ans:** (i) Legitimate government is government under which laws and actions of the government and revealed to

the people and its functions in a transparent manner.

(ii) These laws are applicable to all the citizens, whether rich or poor.

(iii) In a democracy there is a political equality. It provides mechanism for citizens to hold the government

accountable and allows citizens to take part in decision making whenever they think fit.

**34. Explain the role of democracy in eradicating inequality and poverty.**

**Ans** (i) Most of the democracies are welfare states they look for economic equalities.

(ii) Democracies are based on the principle of political equalities

(iii) Democratic government launches various employment schemes

**35. How can democracy adjust the dignity of women and caste discrimination in one system?**

**Ans.** 1. Democracy promotes dignity and freedom of the individuals the passion for respect and freedom is the basis of democracy

2. Democracies throughout the world have recognized this and also this has been achieved in various degrees in various democracies.

3. Once the democracy has accepted this in principle it became easier for women to wage a struggle against what is now unacceptable legally and morally.

**36. Why is a democratic government called a legitimate government?**

**Ans** 1. Democratic government is peoples own government; people wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them

2. It provides people the option to choose their own rulers

3. They also believed that democracy is suitable for their country.

**37. When is democracy considered as successful?**

**Ans-** 1. The examination that democracy has to undergo, never comes to an end.

2. As people get some benefits of democracy, they ask for more and want to make democracy even better.

3. Increasing expectations from and many complaints against democracy are routine observations. The fact the people are complaining is itself a testimony to the success of democracy.

4. A public expression of dissatisfaction with democracy shows the success of democratic projects.

**38. “Democracy is accountable and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens”. Evaluate the statement.**

**Ans** – The most basic outcome of democracy is that it produces a government that is accountable to the citizens, and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens. Economic growth and development, level of economic development is slow because of delays in decision making. Majority should work with minority. Dignity and freedom of citizens every individual wants to receive respect from fellow beings.

**39. Which values make democracy better than any other form of government?**

**Ans:** 1. Democracy promotes equality among citizens as it is people own government.

2. It enhance the dignity of the individual

3. It also improves the quality of decision making.

4. It provides methods to resolve conflict if any.

5. Only democracy allows room to correct mistakes.

6. It is a legitimate government.

7. Give equal status and respect to women and weaker section.

**40. How are the democratic government better than the other form of government? Justify**

**Ans:** Democracy is a better form of government when compared with dictatorship or any any other alternatives form of government because:

1. Democratic government have formal constitution while not in other form of government.

2. They hold regular elections while not in other form of governments.

3. They have political parties unlike others forms of government democracy guarantee rights of citizens.

4. Democratic government allow room to correct mistake while not in the other form of government.

5. Improves the quality of decision making.

**Long answer type questions**

**(5marks)**

**41. There is an overwhelming support for the idea of the democracy all over the world, support the statement.**

**Ans:** Over a hundred countries of the world today claim and practice some kind of democratic politics.

1. They have formal constitution they whole elections they have parties and they guarantee rights to citizens.
2. While these features are common to most of them these democracies are very much different from one another in terms of their social situations, their economic achievements and their cultures.
3. Democracy is a government that is attentive to the needs and demands of the people and largely free of corruption.

**42. What are the conditions under which democracies accommodate social diversities?**

**Ans** -Democracies develops a mechanism which successful negotiates difference among ethnic population.

\*Democracies develop a procedure to conduct their competition. This reduces the possibility of these tension becoming explosive or violent.

\*No society can full and permanently resolve conflict among different groups. But we can certainly learn to respect these differences and can evolve mechanism to negotiate these differences.

\*Ability to handle social differences, division and conflict thus a definite plus point of democratic regimes. For example: Belgium has successful negotiated differences among ethnic population. This reduces the possibility of tensions.

**43. How does democracy promote political and social values?**

**Ans:**1. Accommodation of social diversities.

2. Cooperation between minority and majority.
3. Ability to handle social differences, divisions and conflict.
4. Promotes equality among citizens.
5. Enhance the dignity of the individual.
6. It is responsive to the needs of the people.
7. Improves the quality of decision – making.
8. It is accountable and whether they are not, people have the rights to select any other governance.
9. Democratic government follows procedures and are accountable to the people.
10. Provides a method to resolve conflicts.

**44. Democracy is best suited to produce its own outcomes, explain**

**Ans-** Promotes equality and coexistence among citizens

1. Enhances the dignity of the individuals with majority – minority coordination
2. Improves the quality of decision making in spite of many economic political and social problems
3. Provides a method to resolve conflicts. Allows room to correct mistakes.
4. Believes in discussion, negotiation and shows accountability through transparency
5. It generates its own support which cannot be ignored

**45. Democracy’s ability to generate its own support is itself an outcome that cannot be ignored ignored. Analyze the statement with examples.**

**Ans-** Democracy is a transparent and legitimate government.

1. It ensures that decision making will be based on norm procedure.
2. Every citizen has the right and means to examine the process of decision making.
3. Democratic governments are accountable.
4. People have the right to choose their rulers.
5. Democracy gives its citizens the right to information.

**46. Democratic lead to peaceful and harmonies life among citizens, justify this statement.**

**Ans-** Democracy accommodates various social divisions

1. Democracy reduces the possibility of tension becoming explosive and violent
2. Ability to handle social differences and conflict among different groups is a plus point of democracy
3. Democracy respect differences and provides mechanism to resolve them.
4. Democracy always accommodates minority view.

Any other relevant point

**47. How does the democracy produce an accountable, responsive and legitimate government?**

**Ans** -In democracy people have the rights to elect their rulers and participate in decision making that affect them all. Government thus, is accountable to the citizens and responsive to their needs and expectations. Democracy is based on the idea of deliberation and negotiation through it result in delays. It ensures that the decision making is based on norms and procedures and allows transparency. Develops mechanism for citizens to hold the government accountable.

It may be responsible to expect from democracy a government that is attentive to the needs and demands of the people and is largely free of corruption. Though the record of democracies is not impressive in these two counts.

Democratic government is a legitimate government. It may be slow, less efficient, not always very responsive or clean, but is peoples own governments. People wish to be ruled by representatives elected by them.

**48. Expectations from democracy also function as the criteria for judging any democratic country, Explain.**

**Ans** - \*As democracy passes one test it produces another test. The most positive features of democracy are that people want to make democracy better at every stage.

\*As people get some benefits of democracy, they ask for more. That is why when we ask people about the way democracy functions, they will always come up with more expectations and many complaints

\*Democracy has provided the people a chance to look critically at power holders and the high and the mighty

\*Most individuals today believe that their vote makes a difference to the way the government is run, and to their own self – interest

### Source Based Questions

**49. Read the given extract and answer the following questions:**

**(1+1+2=4)**

In a democracy, we are most concerned with ensuring that people will have the right to choose their rulers and people will have control over rulers. Whenever possible and necessary, citizens should be able to participate in decision making that affects them all. Therefore, the most basic outcome of democracy should be that it produces a government that is accountable to the citizens, and responsive to the needs and expectations of the citizens. Some people think that democracy produces less effective government. It is of course, true that non-democratic rulers are very quick and efficient in decision making and implementation, whereas, democracy is based on idea of deliberation and negotiation. So, some delay is bound to take place. But, because it has followed procedures, its decisions may be both more acceptable to the people and more effective. Moreover, when citizens want to know if a decision was taken through the correct procedures, they can find this out. That have the right and the means to examine the process of decision making. This is known as Transparency. This factor is missing from a non-democratic government. There is another aspect in which democratic government is certainly better from its alternatives democratic government is legitimate government. It may be slow, less efficient, not always very responsive, or clean. But a democratic government is people's own government.

**1. By which rights people will have choose and control over their rulers?**

**Ans**- 1. Right to vote

**2. Define transparency? What helps in promoting transparency in government?**

- i) The right and means to examine the process of government decision making is known as transparency.
- ii) Right to information helps in promoting transparency.

**3. What is legitimate government?**

**Ans**- The government under which laws and actions are revealed to the people in a public manner, not kept secret from them.

# ECONOMICS

## Chapter 17. Development

### What Development Promises – Different Peoples, Different Goals

1. Different people can have different developmental goals.
2. What may be development for one may not be development for the other person. It may even be destructive for the other.

### Income and Other Goals

People want more income. Money, or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. However, the quality of our life also depends on non-material things such as equal treatment, freedom, security and respect for others. For development, people look at a mix of goals. The developmental goals are not only about better income but also about other important things in life.

### National Development

Different persons could have different as well as conflicting notions of a country's development.

### How to Compare Different Countries or States?

To compare countries, their income is considered to be one of the most important attributes. Countries with higher incomes are more developed than others with less income. As different countries have different populations, comparing total income will not tell us what an average person earns. So, we compare the average income of countries.

**Average income** is the total income of the country divided by its total population. It is also called per capita income.

**Average Income = Total Income of Country / Total Population of Country**

In **World Development Reports**, per capita income is used in classifying countries.

1. Countries with per capita income of US \$ 49,300 per annum and above in 2019, are called rich countries.
2. Countries with per capita income of US \$ 2500 or less are called low-income countries.

\*India comes in the category of low middle income because its per capita income in 2019 was just US \$ 6700 per annum.

### Income and Other Criteria

- To achieve a goal, people earn more and want **Respect** from others, the **security of their lives**, and freedom.
- If we consider per capita in the country's development, then Goa is the most developed and Bihar is the least developed state in India.
- **Net attendance ratio**: defined as the total number of children, the age group from 14 years attending the school from the total percentage of children in the same age group.
- **Literacy rate**: it is the total number of people above 7 years who can write, read and understand any one language.
- **Infant mortality rate**: it is the total number of children that die in one year of age as a proportion of 1000 births in a year. It shows how efficient health facilities are in any country.
- **Body mass index (BMI)** is measured to measure the adults who are undernourished by calculating the weight of the person (kg) divided by the square of the height. If the value is less than 18.5, the person is undernourished and if it is more than 25, then the person is highly obese.
- When we think of a nation or a region, besides average income, public facilities are equally significant attributes.

### Public Facilities:

- Public facilities play a major role in the development of the country.
- These are the facilities provided by the government like schools, transportation, electricity, hospitals, residences, community halls, etc.
- These facilities are important as we cannot purchase every major facility

### Sustainability of Development

Sustainable development is defined as development that meets the needs of the present without compromising the ability of future generations.

Scientists have been warning that the present type and levels of development are not sustainable. Some of the examples are:

- Overuse of groundwater
- Exhaustion of natural resources

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

1) For development, people look at a mix of \_\_\_\_\_.

- a) goals                      b) responsibilities                      c) accountability                      d) none of the above

Answer: Option (a)

2) To compare the development of countries, their \_\_\_\_\_ is considered to be one of the most important attributes.

- a) income                      b) population                      c) demographics                      d) none of the above

Answer: Option (a)

3) Assume there are four families in a country. The average per capita income of these families is Rs 5000. If the income of three families is Rs 4000, Rs 7000 and Rs 3000 respectively, what is the income of the fourth family?

- (a) Rs 7500                      (b) Rs 3000                      (c) Rs 2000                      (d) Rs 6000

Answer: Option (d)

4) Since countries have different \_\_\_\_\_, comparing total income will not tell us what an average person is likely to earn.

- a) economic policies                      b) reserves                      c) resources                      d) populations

Answer: Option (d)

5) In World Development Reports, brought out by the \_\_\_\_\_, per capita income criterion is used in classifying countries.

- (a) UNICEF                      (b) World Bank                      (c) World Economic Forum.                      (d) United Nations

Answer: Option (b)

6) Development of a country can generally be determined by

- (a) its per capita income                      (b) its average literacy level  
(c) health status of its people                      (d) all the above

Answer: Option (d)

### Assertion & Reason Question --

#### Option-

- (A) Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true and reason (R) is the correct explanation of assertion (A).  
(B) Both assertion (A) and reason (R) are true but reason (R) is not the correct explanation of assertion (A).  
(C) Assertion (A) is true but reason (R) is false.  
(D) Both assertion (A) and reason (R) is false .

7) **Assertion (A):** Developmental goals that people are not only about better income but also about other important things in life.

**Reason (R):** A safe and secure environment may allow more women to take up a variety of jobs or run a business.

Answer: Option (B)

8) **Assertion (A):** Kerala has a low Infant Mortality Rate.

**Reason (R):** Kerala lacks the provision of basic health and educational facilities.

Answer: Option (C)

**9) Assertion (A)** – A high average income is not indicative of the overall wellbeing of a country.

**Reason (R)** – Average income does not cover human development indicators like level of education, health and public facilities.

**Answer:** Option (A)

**10) Assertion (A):** The availability of resources is a necessary condition for the development of any region, but mere availability of resources in the absence of corresponding changes in technology and institutions may hinder development.

**Reason (R):** There are many regions in our country that are rich in resources but these are included in economically backward regions.

**Answer:** Option (B)

**11) Infant Mortality Rate (IMR) indicates the number of children that die before the age of \_\_\_\_\_ as a proportion of 100 live children born in that particular year.**

- a) four years                      b) one year                      c) two years                      d) three years

**Answer:** Option (b)

**12) Literacy rate measures the proportion of the literate population in the \_\_\_\_\_ age group.**

- a) 10 and above                      b) 21 and above                      c) 7 and above                      d) 18 and above

**Answer:** Option (c)

**13) Net Attendance Ratio is the total number of children of the age group \_\_\_\_\_ attending school as a percentage of the total number of children in the same age group.**

- a) 17 and 8 years                      b) 9 and 10 years                      c) 12 and 13 years                      d) 14 and 15 years

**Answer:** Option (d)

**14) As per the 2011 census, which among the following states has the highest literacy rate?**

- a) Kerala                      b) Maharashtra                      c) Bihar                      d) Odisha

**Answer:** Option (a)

**15) which state has the highest net attendance ratio?**

- a) Gujarat                      b) Maharashtra                      c) Kerala                      d) Bihar

**Answer:** Option (c)

**16) Which of the following statements about money are true?**

- a) Money cannot buy you a pollution-free environment.  
b) Money cannot ensure that you get unadulterated medicines.  
c) Money may also not be able to protect you from infectious diseases.  
d) All of the above.

**Answer:** Option (d)

**17) If the Body Mass Index (BMI) is \_\_\_\_\_, then the adult person would be considered undernourished.**

- a) less than 18.5                      b) less than 10.5                      c) less than 25.5                      d) less than 28.5

**Answer:** Option (a)

**18) If the Body Mass Index (BMI) is \_\_\_\_\_, then the adult person would be considered overweight.**

- a) more than 18                      b) more than 30                      c) more than 45                      d) more than 25

**Answer:** Option (d)

**19) Human Development Report published by UNDP compares countries based on \_\_\_\_\_.**

- a) health status                      (b) per capita income(c) educational levels of the people(d) all of the above

**Answer:** Option (d)

**20) Among the following South Asian countries, \_\_\_\_\_ had the highest life expectancy at birth.**

- a) Myanmar                      b) Sri Lanka                      c) Nepal                      d) India

**Answer:** Option (b)

**21) What are the development goals for a landless rural Labourer?**

**Answer:** Development goals for landless rural Labourers are more days of work, better wages, Equal and humane treatment.

**22) What can developmental goals be for prosperous farmers from Punjab?**

**Answer:** Income through higher support prices for their crops and through hard working and cheap Labour.

**23) What can be a common developmental goal for people?**

**Answer:** Common developmental goals are regular work, better wages, better standard of living, Peace and security.

**24) Define Gross Domestic Product?**

**Answer:** GDP or Gross Domestic Product is the total value of all final goods and services produced during a particular year in a country.

**25) What is per capita income?**

**Answer:** When the total income of the country is divided by its population, we get per capita income. Its average income of the country.

**26) What is infant mortality rate?**

**Answer:** It indicates the number of children that die before the age of one year as a proportion of 1000 live children born in that particular year.

**27) What does literacy rate measure?**

**Answer:** Literacy rate measures the proportion of literate population in the seven and the above age group.

**28) What is net attendance ratio?**

**Answer:** It is the total number of children of age group 6- 10 attending school as a percentage of total number of children in the same age group.

**29) Why has Kerala a low infant mortality rate?**

**Answer:** Kerala has a low infant mortality rate because it has adequate provisions of basic health and educational facilities.

**30) What does life expectancy at birth mean?**

**Answer:** Life expectancy at birth denotes average expected length of life of a person at the time of birth.

**Short Answer Questions**

**(3 marks)**

**31) Why do people look at a mix of goals for development? Explain.**

**Answer:** Though income is one of the most important components of development, but there are other important goals which people look at for development—

1. People also seek things like equal treatment, freedom, security and respect.
2. Women need a safe and secure environment to take up a variety of jobs or to run businesses as entrepreneurs.
3. People seek a pollution free environment.
4. Students seek better education and equal opportunities to learn.

**32) “What may be development for one may not be development for the other.” Explain with a suitable example.**

**Answer:** Different persons have different notions of development because life situations of persons are different. For example, Construction of dams leads to generation of hydroelectricity, thus development. However, many people have to be displaced from their villages, hence it may not be development for them.

**33) Apart from income, which other six things people look for as important aspects of our lives?**

**Answer:** High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life. Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, job security, good working conditions, etc. are essential for a good standard of living.

**34) Why do we use averages? Are there any limitations to their use? Illustrate the answer with**



**your own examples related to development.**

**Answer:** Total income is not a useful measure for comparison between countries. Since countries have different populations, comparing total income does not tell what an average person is likely to earn. Hence, we use average income which is total income of the country divided by total population.

The defect of average as a measure is that it does not show the distribution (dispersion) of income between the rich and the poor. Two countries may have the same average income but in one country almost every family may enjoy more or less the same kind of income, whereas in the other, some may be very rich and others very poor. The disparity between rich and poor is an important feature that the average measure (per capita income) does not consider.

Example: In terms of development, we can take the example of India, where the metro towns are full of high-rise buildings and shopping malls while some villages have not yet been provided with a basic necessity like electricity.

**35) What is per capita income? Mention any two limitations of per capita income as an indicator of development.**

**Answer:** The total income of a country divided by its total population gives the Per Capita Income. Money cannot buy all the goods and services that are needed to live well. So income by itself is not a completely adequate indicator of material goods and services that citizens are able to use. For example, money cannot buy a pollution-free environment or ensure that one gets unadulterated medicines, unless one can afford to shift to a community that already has all these things.

**36) Kerala, with lower per capita income, has a better human development ranking than Punjab. Hence, per capita income is not a useful criterion at all and should not be used to compare States. Do you agree? Discuss.**

**Answer:** Per capita income is not a useful criterion at all to measure the human development ranking of a state. High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life. Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, etc. are essential for a good standard of living. In order to achieve these, joint efforts have to be made by all members of a community, be it rich or poor.

Kerala ranks higher compared to Punjab even with a lower per capita income because—

1. mortality rate is lower
2. literacy rate is higher and
3. total number of children attending school (Classes I-V) is higher.

**37) On the basis of which three indicators of HDI 2013 Sri Lanka has better rank than India?**

**Answer:** Three indicators of HDI 2013 in which Sri Lanka has better rank than India:

1. **Per capita income**—The per capita income of Sri Lanka in US dollars was 9,250 US dollars while that of India was 5150 US dollars.
2. **Life expectancy at birth**—The life expectancy at birth for Sri Lanka was 74.3, higher than that of India at 66.4
3. **Literacy rate for 15 + years population** —Sri Lanka has 91.2 while that of India was 62.8.

**38) ‘Conflicting goals can also be developmental goals’. Elaborate with examples.**

**Answer:** All persons do not have the same notion of development or progress. Each one of them seeks different things. They seek things that are most important for them, i.e., that which can fulfil their aspirations or desires. In fact at times two persons or groups of persons may seek things which are conflicting. A girl expects as much freedom and opportunity as her brother and that he also shares in the household work. Her brother may not like this. To get more electricity, industrialists may want more dams. But this may submerge the land and disrupt the lives of people who are displaced, such as tribals. They might resent this and may prefer small check dams or tanks to irrigate their land.

**39) What are common developmental goals? Give any two suitable examples of common developmental goals.**

**Answer-** There are certain goals which are the same or common for all. These are common developmental

goals. The developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life. More income or more material goods do not always give us a good quality life.

There are other aspects such as equal treatment, freedom, security, opportunity to learn, good working conditions, pollution-free atmosphere, job security and good social life which are very important for a good quality life. Money or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But quality of our life also depends on non-material things, for example, the role of our friends in our life which cannot be measured but mean a lot to us.

**40) “Money cannot buy all the goods and services that one needs to live well” Do you agree with this statement? Justify your answer with any three suitable arguments.**

**Answer:** Yes, I agree with the statement because money income and material goods alone are not an adequate indicator of a good quality of life. Money cannot buy all the goods and services one needs to live well.

- Money cannot buy a pollution free and dean environment with fresh air.
- It cannot protect us from infectious diseases and guarantee good health for us.
- Money cannot assure that medicines available in the market are not adulterated.

To live well one needs non-material factors such as equal treatment, freedom, security, equal opportunity to learn, a pollution free environment, good and safe working conditions etc.

### Long Answer Questions

(5 Marks)

**41) One what basis the rich and low income countries have been categorized in the world? What are the limitations of this approach? According to the World Development Report, 2012, India comes in which category? Give reason for the same.**

**Answer:** The World Bank uses average income or per capita income as a criterion for classifying different countries. Countries with per capita income of \$12616 per annum and above (in the year 2012) are called rich countries and those with per capita income of \$1035 or less are called low income countries .India comes under low income countries; the per capita income in India is US\$1530 per annum. The rich countries excluding middle east and certain other small countries are generally called developed countries

Limitations of this criterion.

1. While averages are useful for comparison, they also hide disparities. Two countries may have identical average income, but one country may have equitable distribution where people are neither very rich nor very poor, while in the other country most citizens are very poor and very few are extremely rich,
2. Better income cannot ensure a good quality life. Criterion set by the World Bank has ignored certain attributes of a good life which do not depend on income or cannot be . bought with money For example,- freedom, equal treatment, equal opportunities, free atmosphere, provision of unadulterated medicines, etc.

**42) Why do different persons have different notions of development? Which of the following explanations is more important and why?**

**(a) Because people are different.**

**(b) Because life situations of persons are different.**

**Answer:** The correct explanation is ‘Because life situations of persons are different.’

Developmental goals are different for different categories of people because of their different aspirations. Aspirations are based on their needs. At times people may have conflicting developmental goals also. What may be development for one may not be development for another. It may even be destructive for the other. Example, Industrialists may want construction of more dams for more electricity, but this may lead to displacement of tribals who live in those areas and thereby disrupt their lives.

Example, the inhabitants of Nandigram in West Bengal are mainly agriculturists and their aspirations are to see development in the field of agriculture, whereas to some it may appear that industrial advancement is more necessary for national development.

**43) What does HDI stand for? Explain the main criteria of measuring HDI according to UNDP Report of 2014**

**Answer:** HDI Stand for Human Development Index.

Main criteria of measuring HDI:

1. HDI published by UNDP compares countries based on the educational levels of the people, their health status and per capita income.
2. HDI determines the rank of a country by its overall achievement in three areas, i.e., life expectancy, educational level and per capita income.
3. Many improvements have been suggested in calculating HDI and many new components have been added to Human Development Report.
4. Pre-fixing Human to Development, it has made it clear that what is important in development is what is happening to citizens of a country, i.e., the health and well being of the people is most important.

**44) Explain with examples that there are other important development goals also besides income?**

**Answer:** More income or more material goods do not always give us a good quality life. There are other aspects such as i)equal treatment, ii)freedom, security, iii)opportunity to learn, iv)good working conditions, v)pollution-free atmosphere, vi)job security and good social life which are very important for a good quality life.

Money or material things that one can buy with it, is one factor on which our life depends. But quality of our life also depends on non-material things,

for example, the role of our friends in our life which cannot be measured but mean a lot to us.

Another example, if we get a job in a far off place, before accepting it we would try consider many factors apart from income such as facilities for our family, working atmosphere, or opportunity to learn. Similarly, for development, people look at a mix of goals. It is true that if women are engaged in paid work, their dignity increases. However, it is also the case that if there is respect for women there would be more sharing of house work and greater acceptance of women.

The developmental goals that people have are not only about better income but also about other important things in life.

**45) Explain any five fields other than income where development is needed.**

**Answer:** Fields other than income where development is needed:

1. **Education.** The government must provide adequate education facilities in all rural and urban areas. The government must necessarily focus on education for girls so that all girls are able to acquire atleast secondary level schooling. Running proper schools and providing quality education, particularly elementary education, is the duty of the Government.
2. **Health.** Basic health care facilities are a must for all. Establishment of government hospitals, clinics and dispensaries, especially in rural areas, to provide subsidized and unadulterated medicines to the poorer sections of society.
3. **Nutrition.** An effective Public Distribution System—proper functioning of ration shops and equitable distribution of foodgrains is very essential.
4. **Transportation.** A well-developed public transport system to make it easy for general public to commute.
5. **Electricity.** It is the duty of the government to provide electricity and water at reasonable rates to the common man and prevent him from exploitation by private companies.

**46) Explain with reasons why state of Punjab with a very high per capita income has a low literacy rate.**

**Answer:** Per capita income is not a useful criterion at all to measure the human development ranking of a state. High per capita income is not the only attribute to a good quality life. Money cannot buy all the essential things required for a good life.

This can be seen in the case of Punjab which has a very high per capita income but a low literacy rate. Having money in one's pocket cannot buy all the goods and services that we need to live well. Money cannot ensure education and literacy. Another reason for low literacy rate in Punjab could be the lack of free and compulsory educational facilities. The government needs to open more schools and provide other facilities so that all children have a chance to study.

Pollution-free atmosphere to ensure good health, protection from infectious diseases, lowering of mortality rate, promotion of literacy, etc. are essential for a good standard of living. In order to achieve these, joint efforts have to be made by all members of a community, be it rich or poor.

**47) Why are the countries of the Middle East not called 'developed' inspite of high per capita income?**

**Answer:** (i) These are small countries.

(ii) The gap between rich and poor is very high,

(iii) Though per capita income in Middle East countries is very high but there is unequal distribution of wealth.

(iv) These countries have high per capita income due to oil production. So they have only one major source of income.

(v) The World Development Report brought out by the World Bank has excluded these countries from the list of developed countries.

**48) Explain the term 'Development'. How is it linked with sustainability? Explain with example.**

**Answer:** (i) Development is a process which has a notion of going further up and improving the quality of life.

(ii) It is linked to sustainability since it has to be maintained for future generations.

(iii) Resources need to be used wisely so that they can be replenished.

(iv) Overuse of resources exhaust them. For example, petroleum.

(v) If development is not sustainable, it will give rise to environmental degradation and become a global problem.

#### Source Based Questions

(1+1+2=4 Marks)

**49) Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:**

One way to find out if we are properly nourished is to calculate what nutrition scientists call it Body mass index (BMI). This is easy to calculate. Let each student in the class find out his or her weight and height. Take the weight of each student in kilograms (kg). Then, take the height by drawing up a scale on the wall and measuring accurately with the head straight. Convert the height recorded in centimeters into meters. Divide the weight in kg by the square of the height. The number you get is called BMI. Then, look at the BMI-for-Age tables. A student's BMI could be within the normal range or less than that (underweight) or more (obesity). For example, if a girl student is 14 years and 8 month old and the BMI is 15.2, then she is undernourished. Similarly, if the BMI of a boy aged 15 years and 6 months is 28, then he is overweight. Discuss the life situation, food and exercise habits of students, in general, without body shaming anyone.

**1. What is Body mass index?**

**Answer-** Body mass index is a measure of body fat based on height and weight .

**2. Identify the correct formula to calculate the BMI.?**

**Answer-**  $\text{Weight} / \text{height}^2$

**3. Rahul is 5 ft 6 inches tall and he weighs 82 kilos. Calculate his BMI. According to Rahul's BMI, he is overweight or Underweight.**

**Answer** -i) 29.2    ii) Overweight

## Chapter 18. SECTORS OF THE INDIAN ECONOMY

**Primary Sector (AGRO BASED SECTOR)** – It refers to the activities wherein goods are produced by exploiting natural resources. It provides the basic raw materials for all secondary production activities. Ex. Agriculture, forestry etc.

**Secondary Sector (INDUSTRY BASED SECTOR)** - It refers to the industrial activity that involves the manufacturing process. Goods are produced in big factories using natural or synthetic products as raw material. Ex.. Textile production, construction, automobile, manufacturing etc.

**Tertiary Sector (SERVICE SECTOR)**- Activities that supports the primary and secondary

sectors comes under Tertiary Sector. It provides services rather than production of goods and hence, it is also called as the service sector. Ex. Transportation, banking, health services etc.

**Gross Domestic Product** -The value of final goods and services produced in each sector during a particular year provides the total production of the sector for that year. And the sum of production in the three sectors gives what is called the Gross Domestic Product (GDP) of a country. It is the value of all final goods and services produced within a country during a particular year.

### **Unemployment**

A situation in which an individual want to do work, qualified for work but not able to get appropriate work and remain free.

### **Types of Unemployment**

**1. Seasonal Unemployment** - Seasonal unemployment occurs when people are unemployed at particular times of the year when demand for labour is lower than usual.

Seasonal unemployment refers to a temporary window of time where the number of available employment opportunities decreases.

**2. Disguised Unemployment. (Hidden Unemployment).** - Underemployment is hidden in contrast to someone who does not have a job and is clearly visible as unemployed. Hence, it is also called disguised unemployment.

### **Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005 (MNREGA)**

**Main features** – from 1 April, 2008. It is called Mahatma Gandhi National Rural Employment Guarantee Act 2005 (MNREGA 2005).

Under MNREGA 2005,

(1)100 days assured employment to rural households under the right to employment.

(2) Unemployment allowances in case of failure of Gov. in its duty to provide employment .

### **DIVISION OF SECTORS- AS ORGANISED AND UNORGANISED-**

#### **Features of organised sector.**

1. An appointment letter is given stating terms of jobs at starting of job.
2. Employee cannot be fired for no reason.
3. Extra allowances are given.
4. Paid leaves ,Medical benefits,gratituty,pension ,LTC. Etc are provided
5. Extra money is given in case of overtime.

#### **Features of unorganised sector**

1. There is no job security.
2. Jobs here are low paid and often not regular .
3. Workers are provided daily wages.
4. There are laws in this sector but are not followed.
5. When there is less work load then workers are asked to leave the job without any reason.
6. There is no provision for overtime, paid leaves, holidays ,leave due to sickness etc

### **SECTORS IN TERMS OF OWNERSHIP : PUBLIC AND PRIVATE SECTORS**

#### **Public Sector**

1. The government owns most of the assets and provides all the services.
2. The purpose of the public sector is not just to earn profit, but also to raise the welfare of the economy.
3. Railways or post office is an example of the public sector.

#### **Private Sector**

1. Ownership of assets and delivery of services is in the hands of private individuals or companies.
2. Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profit.
3. Tata Iron and Steel Company Limited or Reliance Industries Limited are privately owned.

### Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)

**1. The production of a good by exploiting natural resources are covered in which sector**

- (A) Primary sector (B) Secondary sector (C) Tertiary sector (D) None of the above

**Ans.**-(A) Primary sector

**2 Which sector covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms.**

- (A) Primary sector (B) Secondary sector (C) Tertiary sector (D) None of the above

**Ans.**-(B) Secondary sector

**3. Transportation, storage, communication, banking, trade are the examples of which sector?**

- (A) Primary sector (B) Secondary sector (C) Tertiary sector (D) None of the above

**Ans.** (C) Tertiary sector

**4. The goods that are used up in producing final goods and services are called-**

- (A) Intermediate goods (B) Final goods (C) Between goods (D) None of the above

**Ans.**-(A) Intermediate goods

**5 The motive of public sector enterprises is:**

- (A) Profit making (B) Entertainment (C) Social welfare and security (D) None of the above

**6. Match the following:-**

COLUMN A	COLUMN B
1. Under employment	a. Secured job.
2. Right to work	b. There are more people.
3. Employment in Organised sector	c. No paid holidays.
4. Employment in Unorganised sector	d. 100 days of assured employment.

**OPTION -**

- A. 1-b, 2-a, 3-c, 4-d.  
 B. 1-b, 2-c, 3-d, 4-a.  
 C. 1-b, 2-a, 3-d, 4-c.  
 D. 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c

**Ans.**-- (D) 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c

**Assertion –Reason Questions**

Directions: In the following questions, A statement of Assertion (A) is followed by a statement of Reason (R). Mark the correct choice as:

- A. Both A and R true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
 B. Both A and R true and R is not the correct explanation of A.  
 C. A is true but R is false.  
 D. A is false and R is true.

**7 Assertion (A):** Under MGNREGA 2005, those who are able to, and are in need to work in rural areas are guaranteed 100 days of employment in a year.

**Reason (R)** The Central government in India made a law implementing the Right to work in about 625 districts of India.

**Ans.**-Option - A

**8 Assertion (A):** In India, over the forty years between 1973-74 and 2013-14, while production in all the three sectors has increased, it has increased the most in the tertiary sector.

**Reason (R):** Tertiary sector is the only organized sector in the economy so the government spends a lot of money for creating jobs in tertiary sector.

**Ans.**-Option -C

**9 Assertion (A):** Reliance industry is a privately owned firm.

**Reason (R):** Government is a major stakeholder in Reliance industry.

Ans.-Option -C

**10. Assertion (A): The unorganised sector is characterised by small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government.**

**Reason (R): There are rules and regulations but these are not followed in unorganised sector**

Ans.-Option -A

**11 The value of all final goods and service produced within a country during a particular year is known as-**

- (a) Gross Domestic Product (GDP) (b) Literacy rate  
(c) Infant mortality rate (d) Net attendance ratio

Ans. (a) Gross Domestic Product (GDP)

**12. Kamal is a daily wage labourer in a nearby grocery shop. He goes to the shop at 7:30 in the morning and works till 8:00 p.m. in the evening. He gets no other allowances apart from his wages. He is not paid for the days he does not work. He has, therefore, no leave or paid holidays. Nor was he given any formal letter saying that he has been employed in the shop. He can be asked to leave anytime with his employer. In which sector Kamal is engaged? Tick the most appropriate option**

- a) Public Sector      b) Unorganised Sector      c) Organised Sector      d) Primary Sector

Ans.-(b) Unorganised Sector

**13. In a family all 5 members are working in farm land owned by them but only 3 are enough to work efficiently, then those extra 2 members are actually unemployed. Which situation is being referred to in this example?**

- a) Disguised Unemployment      b) Seasonal Unemployment  
c) Structural Unemployment      d) Educated Unemployment

Ans.-a) Disguised Unemployment

**14. Farmers buy many goods such as tractors, pump sets, electricity, pesticides and fertilizers. Now suppose, if the price of fertilizers or pump sets goes up, the cost of cultivation of the farmers will rise and their profits will be reduced. What kind of situation is being indicated here?**

- a) This is an example of the secondary or industrial sector being dependent on the primary sector  
b) This is an example of the primary sector being dependent on the tertiary sector  
c) This is an example of the secondary sector being dependent on the tertiary sector.  
d) This is an example of the primary sector i.e., agriculture being dependent on the secondary sector.

Ans.-option-(d)

**15- Kamla works in an office. She attends her office from 9.30 a.m. to 5.30 p.m. She gets her salary regularly at the end of every month. In addition to the salary, she also gets medical and other allowances like paid holiday, provident fund. She will also get pension after retirement . When she joined work, she was given an appointment letter stating all the terms and conditions of work. In which sector Kamla is engaged in -----**

- a) Unorganised Sector      b) Organised Sector  
c) Secondary Sector      d) Primary Sector

Ans.-option-(b)

**16. Which one of the following activities can be included in the primary sector?**

- a. Giving loans to the farmer      b. Making Sugar from sugar cane  
c. Cultivating sugar cane      d. Providing storage facility for the grains

Ans.-option-(c)

**17. The service sector includes activities such as:**

- a. agriculture, dairy, fishing and forestry      b. making sugar, gur and bricks  
c. Making cloths, mats and carpet      d. transport, communication and banking

Ans.-option-(d)

**18. Which of the following statements is not true?**

- a. GDP of India is calculated by the state government of the largest Indian state.  
b. Calculating GDP is a massive task.

- c. GDP shows the level of development of an economy.
- d. GDP is the value of all final goods and services that are produced in a country during one financial year.

**Ans.-option- (a)**

**19..Which of the following statements is true in respect of Public Sector ?**

- a. Big companies own most of the assets
- b. Government owns the assets
- c. A group of people owns most of the assets
- d. An individual owns most of the assets

**Ans.-option-(b)**

**20 Which of the following persons works in the unorganized sector of the economy ?**

- a. A teacher employed in a government school
- b. An engineer in Maruti Suzuki Ltd.
- c. A domestic helper in a rich family
- d. A manager of a nationalized bank

**Ans. (c) A domestic helper in a rich family**

**Very short answer type questions (2marks)**

**21. What are final goods? Write two examples?**

**Ans:** Final goods are those goods which are used either for the final consumption or for capital formation. These are not resold, In short. final goods have crossed the boundary line of production, and are ready for the use by the final users. Cloth, air conditioners and refrigerators are examples of final goods.

**22. What are basic services? How do they contribute for the growth of Tertiary sector?**

**Ans:** In any country, several services such as hospitals, educational institutions, post and telegraph services, police stations. courts, village administrative offices, Municipal Corporation, Defence, transport. banks, insurance companies, etc. are required. These are considered as the basic services. Owing to growing income and demand for such services tertiary sector becoming important.

**23. State any three need for protecting the Public sector?**

- Ans:**
1. To achieve social justice and equity
  2. To provide basic services at an affordable price
  3. Generating employment opportunities

**24. What is Unemployment ?**

**Ans.** situation in which an individual want to do work, qualified for work but not able to get appropriate work and remain free.

**25. What is disguised unemployment?**

**Ans-** When more people are working than its requirement then it is called disguised unemployment. So, even if we remove a few people from the job, the process of production will not be affected, it is also called underemployment.

**26. what is Tertiary Sector?**

**Ans.** It provides services rather than production of goods and services, hence it is also called as the service sector.Ex. Transportation, banking, health services etc.Activities that supports the primary and secondary sectors comes under Tertiary Sector.

**27.what is Seasonal unemployment?**

**Ans.-**Seasonal unemployment occurs when people are unemployed at particular times of the year when demand for labour is lower than usual.Seasonal unemployment refers to a temporary window of time where the number of available employment opportunities decreases.

**28.Why are only final goods and services counted?**

**Ans.-**The value of only final goods and services is counted because the value of intermediate goods and services are already included in the value of the final goods.

**29.What do you mean by Gross Domestic Product?**

**Ans.**The total value of the production of the final goods produced in all the sectors during a financial year is the GDP of that country for that year.

**30.When does the underemployment occurs?**

**Ans-**Underemployment occurs when people are working less than what they are capable of



doing . A person seems to be employed but their job does not fully utilize their skills ,ability or education .

### Short Answer Type Questions

(3marks)

#### 31. Differentiate between Public sector and private sector

##### Ans- Public Sector

1. The government owns most of the assets and provides all the services.
2. The purpose of the public sector is not just to earn profit, but also to raise the welfare of the economy.
3. Railways or post office is an example of the public sector.

##### Private Sector

1. Ownership of assets and delivery of services is in the hands of private individuals or companies.
2. Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profit.
3. Tata Iron and Steel Company Limited or Reliance Industries Limited are privately

#### 32-Distinguish between unemployment and underemployment.?

**Ans: Unemployment** is a situation where the able-bodied persons willing to work but are not able to get a work. **Underemployment** is the situation of where people are apparently working but all of them are made to work less than their potential. This kind of underemployment hidden in contrast to someone who does not have a job. Hence, it is also called disguised unemployment.

#### 33. In what ways government can increase employment in the rural sector?

- Ans.** (i) By introducing mega projects new dam can constructed and canals.  
(ii)By introducing tertiary facilities in an area.  
(iii)It is also possible to set up industries that process vegetables and agricultural product like potato, sweet potato.  
(iv)By promoting tourism or regional craft industry.  
(v) To identify, promote and locate industry and services in semi-rural areas.

#### 34-. Tertiary sector is different from other sectors. Justify the statement with suitable argument.

**Ans.**-Difference from other sectors:

- (i) Tertiary sector is the basic service sector where primary and secondary are the sectors that produce goods.
- (ii)Tertiary sector support and help in the development the primary and secondary sectors.
- (iii)Tertiary sector provides services like transport, banking and communication
- (iv)It generates more employment than other sector.

#### 35-Why is it necessary to give protection and support to the unorganized sector workers? Explain.

**Ans:** i) The unorganized sector is characterized by small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government. Workers working in an unorganized sector get fewer wages. There is no provision of overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness, etc. Employment is subject to high degree of insecurity.

#### 36-Why is MGNREGA also called the right to work? Explain.

**Ans.** -MGNREGA is also called Right to Work:

- (i) MGNREGA guarantees 100 days of assured work to the people who are able and in need of work.
- (ii) If the government fails to provide work, it will provide unemployment allowances to the people.
- (iii) One-third of the jobs are reserved for women.
- (iv)Under this scheme, the gram panchayat after proper verification will register households and issue job cards.
- v)And in case of failure unemployment allowance will be given to them.

#### 37-What are the advantages of working in an organized sector?

**Ans:** i) Workers in the organized sector enjoy security of employment.

- ii) They work only a fixed number of hours. If they work more, they have to be paid overtime by the employer.
- iii) They also get several other benefits from the employers like paid leave, payment during holidays, provident fund, gratuity, etc.
- iv) They also get medical benefits and, under the laws, the factory manager has to ensure facilities like drinking water and a safe working environment

**Long Answer type question**

**(5 marks)**

**38. What is secondary sector? what activities are covered under secondary?**

Ans.- The secondary sector covers activities in which natural products are changed into other forms through ways of manufacturing. This could be in a factory, a workshop, or at home.

For example, using cotton fibre from the plant, we spin yarn and weave cloth. Since this sector gradually became associated with the different kinds of industries that came up, it is also called as industrial sector

**39. Differentiate between public sector and private sector ?**

Ans.-Differences are -

**Public Sector**

1. The government owns most of the assets and provides all the services.
2. The purpose of the public sector is not just to earn profit, but also to raise the welfare of the economy.
3. Railways or post office is an example of the public sector.

**Private Sector**

1. Ownership of assets and delivery of services is in the hands of private individuals or companies.
2. Activities in the private sector are guided by the motive to earn profit.
3. Tata Iron and Steel Company Limited or Reliance Industries Limited are privately owned

**40. Why is the tertiary sector becoming so important in India?**

**Ans.- Importance of Tertiary Sector**

1. Increase in demand of basic services like transport, bank and insurance, educational institutions etc due to growing population.
2. The development of agriculture and industry lead to the development of services such as transport, trade, storage etc.
3. As income level rises, certain section of people started demanding many services like eating out, tourism, private hospital etc.
4. Certain new services such as those based on information and communication technology have become important and essential

**41. How to Protect Workers in the Unorganised Sector?**

- Ans.-1. The government can fix minimum wages.
2. The government should provide specific working hours.
  3. The government can enact new laws on overtime and salary range.
  4. Provide cheap loan with low interest.
  5. Open small scale industry.

**Source Based Answer Question**

**(1+1+2=4)**

**42. Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follow:**

People have assured work. They are registered by the government and have to follow its rules and regulations which are given in various laws such as the Factories Act, Minimum Wages Act, Payment of Gratuity Act, Shops and Establishments Act, etc. It is called organised because it has some formal processes and procedures. Some of these people may not be employed by anyone but may work on their own but they too have to register themselves with the government and follow the rules and regulations. Workers in the organised sector enjoy the security of employment. They are expected to work only a fixed number of hours. If they work more, they have to be paid overtime by the employer. They also get

several other benefits from employers. They get paid leave, payment during holidays, provident fund, gratuity, etc. They are supposed to get medical benefits and, under the laws, the factory manager has to ensure facilities like drinking water and a safe working environment. When they retire, these workers get pensions as well. In contrast, the unorganised sector is characterised by small and scattered units which are largely outside the control of the government. There are rules and regulations but these are not followed. Jobs here are low-paid and often not regular. There is no provision for overtime, paid leave, holidays, leave due to sickness, etc. Employment is not secure. Organised sector covers those enterprises or places of work where the terms of employment are People can be asked to leave without any reason. When there is less work, such as during some seasons, some people may be asked to leave. A lot also depends on the whims of the employer. This sector includes a large number of people who are employed on their own doing small jobs such as selling on the street or doing repair work. Similarly, farmers work on their own and hire labourers as and when they require.

### **1.what is organised sector?**

**Ans.-**Organised sector covers those enterprises or places of work where the terms of employment are regular and therefore, people have assured work.

### **2.Employment is not secure in unorganised sector. why?**

**Ans.** When there is less work, such as during some seasons, some people may be asked to leave.

### **3.what are the benefits given to organised sectors?**

**Ans.-**Workers in the organised sector enjoy the security of employment. They are expected to work only a fixed number of hours. If they work more, they have to be paid overtime by the employer. They also get several other benefits from employers. They get paid leave, payment during holidays, provident fund, gratuity, etc. They a get medical benefits and, under the laws, the factory manager has to ensure facilities like drinking water and a safe working environment.

## **Chapter 19. Money and Credit**

**Barter System.** Before the introduction of money, Indians used grains and cattle as money. In a barter system, selling and purchasing of goods and services was done with “double coincidence of wants” i.e by fulfilling mutual wants without the use of money. In this system goods and services was exchanged for another goods and services. It was also known as CC economy i.e commodity for commodity economy.

### **Modern form of money: -**

#### **(i) Currency**

- Modern forms of money include currency — paper notes and coins. The modern coins are not made with the precious metals like gold, silver. The real values of the modern coins are less than its face value. Currency notes are also used as a medium of exchange in modern economy. The currency notes are made with paper. The real values of the currency notes are less than its face value.
- The currency is authorized by the government of the country. So, it is used as a medium of exchange and accepted by the others. In India, Reserve bank of India has authority to issue currency notes on behalf of the central government. In India, no individual can legally refuse to accept the rupees issued by the Reserve bank of India.

#### **(ii) Deposits with Banks**

- Deposits with Banks are also a form of money. A person can deposit in the bank by opening an account on his/her name. People need only some money at a point of time. So, people can deposit extra money and earn extra money, which is given on money already depositing in bank.
- A facility of payment through cheque is also provided by the bank to their customers. Cheque work as an instrument for payment which is made by the paper. A person can directly transfer money to another person through cheque rather than in cash.

### **Loan activities of bank: -**

- Bank work as mediator between the depositors and the borrowers. People deposit their money in bank and get some rate of interest as extra income. Banks hold only some percentage of their deposit in bank.
- A major portion of the deposited money is provided to those people who are needy of money for economic activities. In this case, money is provided as a loan with a higher rate of interest. The difference between interest on borrowing money and the interest of deposited money is the income for the bank.
- **Credit** is an agreement in which is created when a person gives money and goods to the needy person with the promise of to repay that with some rate of interest.

**Two different credit situations :-**

- In the first situation, a person borrows money for production activities with the promise to repay the loan at the end of the year when production work will be completed. And at the end of the year, he/she makes a good profit from production activities and he/she is able to pay the amount of loan. Therefore, that person becomes better off than before.
- In the second situation, a person borrows money for production activities with the promise to repay the loan at the end of the year when production work will be completed. And at the end of the year he/she unable to repay the loan due to loss in production. For this term, he/she come under the situation of debt trap. Therefore, that person becomes worse off than before.

**Terms of credit: -**

- **The interest rate, collateral and some documents** fulfill the requirements of the terms of credit. Interest rate is specified when a lender provides loan to the borrowers. A borrower will have to repay the amount taken from the lenders with the amount of interest. In some case, lenders may demand collateral against loans.

- **Collateral** is an asset of the borrowers which is given to the lenders as security for the specified period. A lender can use the assets which are held by him as security until the amount of loan is repaid. The lender has right to sell the assets or collateral when the borrower fails to repay the amount of loan in a specified period.

**Sector of credit in India: -** major portion of the deposited money is provided to those people who are needy of money for economic activities

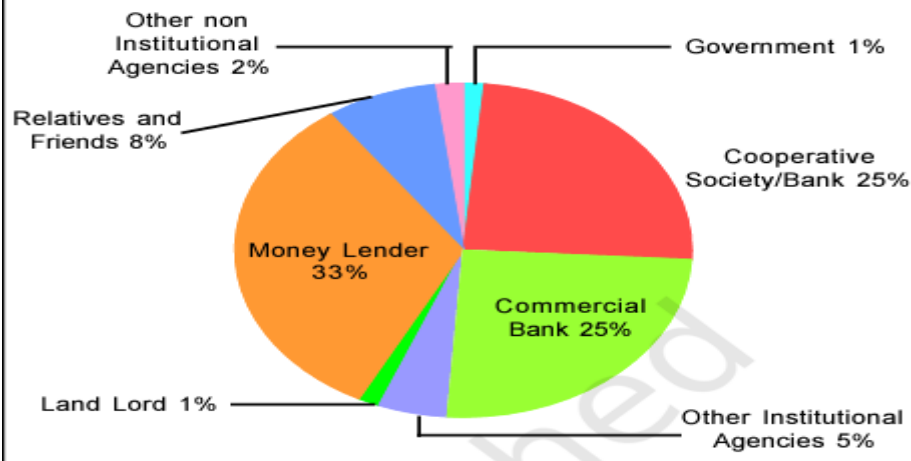
- There are two types of sources of credit in an economy.

- Formal sector
- Informal sector

- **Formal sector: -** In the formal sector, loans from banks and cooperatives are included. The rate of interest in low. Rate of interest in formal sector is supervised by the legal authorities. In India Reserve bank of India is supervised the functioning of loan activities in formal sectors

- **Informal sector: -** In the Informal sector, loans from moneylenders, traders, employers, relatives and friends are included. The rate of interest is high ,varying from person to person .There is no organization for supervising loan in informal sector. Lenders can use any method to get back their money from the borrowers. Sometimes, the incomes of the borrowers become less compare than the amount which has to pay due to the high rate of interest.

**Graph 1 : Sources of Credit per Rs 1000 of Rural Households in India in 2012**



• In this chart, we can see sources of credit in rural areas are mostly dependent on professional and agriculture moneylenders in case of informal sources of loan. The poor are dependent on informal sector for borrowing loan. The poor have to pay a high rate of interest to the moneylenders. It is difficult to borrow loan from the bank. Because of the absence of the collateral and documents. And documents and collateral are required for a bank loan. Informal lenders like, moneylenders are often willing to give a loan without collateral because they personally knew the borrowers. For the development of a country, cheap and affordable credit is crucial. Therefore, the government should facilitate formal sources of credit basically in rural areas.

#### **Self-help groups for the poor –**

- An organisation constituted to collect the savings of the poor which is known as self-help group. The aim of the organisation is to lend loan at less rate of interest compared to the rate of interest specified by the moneylenders. A self-help group has 15 – 20 members. Savings vary from member to member i.e Rs. 25 to Rs. 100 depending on the ability of the person to save. It is not difficult to take a loan here as documents and collateral are not required
- The organisation also provides self-employment opportunity for the member by the way of sanctioning the group. For example, small loans are provided to the members for releasing mortgaged land, for meeting working capital needs, for housing materials, for acquiring assets. There is also a group for repayment of loan. In case of any non-repayment by the one member is followed by the other member of the organisation.

#### **Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)**

##### **1. Who issues the currency notes in India?**

- Currency notes are issued by the Finance Commission.
- All the nationalized banks can issue the currency notes.
- Only Reserve Bank of India can issue currency notes.
- Any individual or organization can issue currency notes with the permission of the govt.

Answer: (c) Only Reserve Bank of India can issue currency notes.

##### **2. Who supervises the banks in India?**

- RBI
- State Bank of India
- Bank of India
- Central Bank of India

Answer: (a) RBI

##### **3. What do the banks do with the deposits which they accept from the customers?**

- Banks use these deposits for charitable activities.
- Banks use a major portion of deposits to extend loans.

- (c) Banks use deposits to give bonus to their employees.
- (d) Banks use deposits to set up more branches in the country.

Answer: (b) Banks use a major portion of deposits to extend loans.

**4. What is the main source of income of a bank?**

- (a) Bank charges that the depositors pay for ; keeping their money safe is the main ; source of the bank's income.
- (b) The difference between what is charged from the borrowers and paid to the depositors is the main source of bank's income.
- (c) Banks earn huge amounts of money by investing the money of the depositors in various company shares.
- (d) The Government of India gives huge amounts of money to the banks to help their smooth functioning.

Answer: (b) The difference between what is charged from the borrowers and paid to the depositors is the main source of bank's income.

**5. An agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future payment refers to**

- (a) Debt
- (b) Deposit
- (c) Credit
- (d) Collateral

Answer: (c) Credit

**6. Which body (authority) supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans?**

- (a) Finance Ministry
- (b) Head Office of each Bank
- (c) Reserve Bank
- (d) Cooperative Societies

Answer: (c) Reserve Bank

**7. Money-lenders usually demand a 'security' from the borrower. What is the formal word used for the 'security', such as land, vehicle, livestock, building, etc.?**

- (a) Deposit
- (b) Collateral
- (c) Credit
- (d) Guarantee

Answer: (b) Collateral

**8. Which among the following options will be the cheapest source of credit in rural areas?**

- (a) Bank
- (b) Cooperative Society
- (c) Money-lender
- (d) Finance Company

Answer: (b) Cooperative Society

**9. In which country is the Grameen Bank meeting the credit needs of over 6 million poor people?**

- (a) Bhutan
- (b) Sri Lanka
- (c) Bangladesh
- (d) Nepal

Answer: (c) Bangladesh

**10. A typical Self - Help Group usually has**

- (a) 100-200 members
- (b) 50-100 members
- (c) less than 10 members
- (d) 15-20 members

Answer: (d) 15-20 members

**11. Which of the following is not an informal source of credit?**

- (a) Money-lender
- (b) Relatives and Friends
- (c) Commercial Banks
- (d) Traders

Answer: (c) Commercial Banks

**12. Why is currency accepted as a medium of exchange?**

- (a) Because the currency is authorised by the government of the country.
- (b) Because it is liked by the people who use it.
- (c) Because the use of currency has its origin in ancient times.
- (d) Because the currency is authorised by the World Bank.

Answer: (a) Because the currency is authorised by the government of the country.

**13. Which one of the following is the important characteristic of modern form of currency?**

- (a) It is made from precious metal
- (b) It is made from thing of everyday use
- (c) It is authorised by the commercial banks
- (d) It is authorised by the Government of the country

Answer: (d) It is authorised by the Government of the country

**14. Which one of the following is the main source of credit for the rich households?**

- (a) Informal (b) Formal (c) Both formal and informal (d) Neither Formal nor informal

**Answer:** (b) Formal

**15. Which is not the main source of credit from the following for rural households in India?**

- (a) Traders (b) Relatives and friends (c) Commercial Banks (d) Money lenders

**Answer:** (c) Commercial Banks

**16. Which among these is an essential feature of barter system?**

- (a) Money can easily exchange any commodity  
(b) It is based on double co-incidence of wants  
(c) It is generally accepted as a medium of exchange of goods with money  
(d) It acts as a measure and store of value

**Answer:** (b) It is based on double co-incidence of wants

**The following questions consist of two statements — Assertion (A) and Reason (R). Answer these questions selecting the appropriate option given below:**

- (a) Both A and R are true and R is the correct explanation of A.  
(b) Both A and R are true but R is not the correct explanation of A.  
(c) A is true but R is false. (c) A is true but R is false.  
(d) A is false but R is true.

**17. Assertion (A):** Credit would be useful or not depends on the risk involved in a situation.

**Reason (R):** The chance of benefitting from credit is highest in agricultural sector.

**Answer:** (c) A is true but R is false.

**18. Assertion (A):** Modern currency is used as a medium of exchange, however, it does not have a use of its own.

**Reason (R):** Modern currency is easy to carry.

**Answer:** (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

**19. Assertion (A):** Banks charge a higher interest rate on loans than what they offer on deposits.

**Reason (R):** The difference between what is charged from borrowers and what is paid to depositors is their main source of income.

**Answer:** (a) Both assertion and reason are true and reason is the correct explanation of assertion.

**20. Assertion (A):** Banks keep only a small proportion of their deposits as cash with themselves.

**Reason (R):** Banks in India these days hold about 15 per cent of their deposits as cash.

**Answer:** (b) Both assertion and reason are true but reason is not the correct explanation of assertion.

### Very Short Answer Type Questions

(02 marks)

**21. Why are transactions made in money?**

**Answer:** A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or she might want.

**22. How is money beneficial in transactions?**

**Answer:** Money is beneficial in transactions. It eliminates the need for double coincidence of wants. It acts as a medium of exchange.

**23. What is 'double coincidence of wants'?**

**Answer:** What a person desires to sell is exactly what the other wishes to buy is double coincidence of wants

**24. What is barter system?**

**Answer:** When goods are directly exchanged for goods and there is no use of money, it is called barter system.

**25. How does the use of money make it easier to exchange things? Give an example.**

**Answer:** A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or

she might want. For example- The shoe manufacturer will first exchange shoes that he has produced for money and then exchange the money for wheat.

**26. Why one cannot refuse a payment made in rupees in India?**

**Answer:** One cannot refuse a payment made in rupees in India, Because it is accepted as a medium of exchange as the currency is authorized by the government of the country.

**27. Highlight the inherent problem in double coincidence of wants.**

**Answer:** The inherent problem in double coincidence of wants is that both parties have to agree to sell and buy each other's commodities.

**28. What was used as money in early ages in India?**

**Answer:** In the very early ages, Indians used grains and cattle as money to exchange goods for goods.

**29. Which metals were used for making coins in India in later stages?**

**Answer:** Gold, Copper, Silver coins were used in later stages for making coins in India.

**30. What does modern form of money include?**

**Answer:** Modern form of money includes currency—that is paper notes and coins.

**Short Answer Types Questions: (03 marks)**

**31. What is the meaning of 'barter system' ?**

**Ans:** Barter system refers to the system of exchange of goods and services. It is the system by which one commodity is exchanged for another without the use of money. Before money was introduced, people practised barter system. Example: A farmer could buy a dhoti from a weaver or a pair of shoes from a cobbler in exchange of grains he produced.

**32. Why do banks ask for collateral while giving credit to a borrower ?**

**Ans:** Collateral is an asset that the borrower owns (land, building, vehicle, livestock, land documents, deposits with banks etc.) which stands as a security against the money borrowed. In case the borrower fails to repay the loan, the lender has the right to sell the asset or collateral to recover the loan money. Most lenders ask for collateral while lending as a security against their own funds.

**33. Highlight the inherent problem in double coincidence of wants.**

**Ans:** Double coincidence of wants means that when someone wants to exchange his goods with another person, the latter must also be willing to exchange his goods with the first person. It can only work when both the persons are ready to exchange each other's goods.

**34. What is money? Why is modern money currency accepted as a medium of exchange?**

**Ans:** Money is a medium of exchange in transactions. A person holding money can easily exchange it for any commodity or service that he or she might want.

Modern money currency is accepted as a medium of exchange because

- i) it is certified for a particular denomination (For example, ₹ 10, ₹ 20, ₹ 100, ₹ 1,000).
- ii) it is issued by the Reserve Bank of the country.
- iii) it is authorized by the government of the country.

**35. How is money used in everyday life ? Explain with examples.**

**Ans:** Money plays a central role in our daily life. It is used as a medium of exchange to carry out transactions.

1. Money buys us food, clothing, shelter and other basic necessities of life.
2. Money provides us social security. It is needed to procure services like transport, education, healthcare, entertainment, recreation, and so on. Money facilitates business and trade and is the basis of the working of an economy.

**36. Why is it necessary for the banks and cooperative societies to increase their lending facilities in rural areas? Explain.**

**Ans:** Banks and Cooperatives can help people in obtaining cheap and affordable loans. This will help people to grow crops, do business, set up small-scale industries or trade in goods and also help



indirectly in the country's development. They should do so, so that relatively poor people do not have to depend on informal sources of credit (money-lenders).

**37. Why do informal vendors give loans to people not having any collateral?**

**Ans:** Informal vendors give loans to people not having any collateral Because

- i) they know the borrowers personally.
- ii) They charge high rate of interest.
- iii) They can use unfair or illegal means to get their money back.

**Long Answer Types Questions:**

**(05 marks)**

**38. Why do we need to expand formal sources of credit in India?**

**Ans:** Need to expand formal sector :

1. There is no organisation that supervises the credit activities of lenders in the informal sector. They lend at whatever interest rate they choose.
2. No one can stop rural money-lenders from using unfair means to get their money back.
3. Informal lenders charge a very high rate of interest on loans and as a result a larger part of the earnings of the borrowers and farmers are used to pay the loans.
4. The amount to be repaid is often greater than income, and farmers and other borrowers in villages fall in a debt trap.

Thus, it is necessary that banks and co-operatives increase their lending, particularly in rural areas, so that dependence on informal sources of credit ends.

**39. 'Banks and cooperatives help people in obtaining cheap and affordable loans' Which values according to you does this support?**

**Ans:** Cheap and affordable loans help people to grow crops, do business, set up small scale industries or trade in goods.

This promotes:

1. Self-reliance and financial security and independence of people.
2. Protection of the relatively poor against corrupt moneylenders.
3. Eradication of poverty in general.
4. All this indirectly helps in the country's development.

**40. Which government body supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans in India ? Explain its functioning.**

**Ans:** The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans.

Functions of Reserve Bank of India.

1. RBI requires commercial banks to maintain a minimum cash balance out of the deposits they receive. The RBI monitors that the banks actually maintain the cash balance.
2. RBI sees that the banks give loans not just to profit-making businesses and traders but also to small cultivators, small-scale industries, small borrowers, SHGs, etc.
3. RBI issues guidelines for fixing rate of interest on deposits and lending by commercial banks.
4. Periodically, banks have to submit information to the RBI on how much they are lending, to whom, at what interest rate, etc.

**41. "Deposits with the banks are beneficial to the depositors as well as to the nation". Examine the statement.**

**Ans: Benefit of deposits to the depositors:**

1. Bank accepts the deposits and pays interest to the depositor.
2. Banks help people save their money and keep their money in safe custody of the bank.
3. People can withdraw the money as and when they require.
4. Banks also grant loans to people for a variety of purposes. In times of need, individuals, business houses and industries can borrow money from the banks.

**Benefit of deposits to the Nation:**

1. Banks use the major proportion of the deposit to extend loans.
2. There is a huge demand for loans for various economic activities. In times of need,

business houses and industries can borrow money from the banks.

3. Banks mediate between those who have surplus funds and those who are in need of these funds.

Thus, it helps in the economic development of the Nation.

**42. How can the formal sector loans be made beneficial for poor farmers and workers? Suggest any five measures.**

**Ans:** Formal sector loans can be made beneficial for poor farmers and workers in the following ways:

1. Create greater awareness among farmers about formal sector loans.
2. Process of providing loans should be made easier. It should be simple, fast and timely.
3. More number of Nationalized Banks/cooperative banks should be opened in rural sectors. Banks and cooperatives should increase facility of providing loans so that dependence on informal sources of credit reduces.
4. The benefits of loans should be extended to poor farmers and small scale industries.
5. While formal sector loans need to expand, it is also necessary that everyone receives these loans. It is important that formal credit is distributed more equally so that the poor can benefit from cheaper loans.

**43. Describe the vital and positive role of credit with examples.**

**Ans:** In the festive season, a shoe manufacturer, Ram receives an order from a large trader in town for 3,000 pairs of shoes to be delivered in a month's time. To complete production on time Ram has to hire workers for stitching and pasting work. He has to purchase the raw materials. To meet these expenses Ram obtains loans from two sources.

First, he asks the leather supplier to supply leather now and promises to pay him later.

Second, he obtains loan in cash from the large traders as advance payment for 1000 pairs of shoes with a promise to deliver the whole order by the end of the month.

At the end of the month, Salim is able to deliver the order, make a good profit and repay the money he had borrowed. Salim obtains credit to meet the working capital needs of production. The credit helps him to meet the ongoing expenses of production, complete production on time and thus increase his earnings. Credit therefore plays a vital and positive role in this situation.

**45. What is the basic objective of 'Self Help Groups'? How do they work? Describe any four advantages of 'Self Help Groups' for the poor.**

**Ans:** The basic objective of 'Self Help Groups' is to organize rural poor, particularly women belonging to one neighbourhood into small Self-Help Groups (15-20 members). These members save regularly and the amount varies from ₹25-100 or more depending upon their ability to save.

The four advantages of 'Self Help Groups' are as follows:

1. The members can take small loans from the group itself to meet their needs. The group charges interest on these loans which is still less than what moneylenders charge.
2. After a year or two, if the group is regular in savings, it becomes eligible for availing loan from the bank which is sanctioned in the name of the group to create self employment opportunities. All important decisions regarding loan, purpose, amount of interest, non-payment of loan is taken by the group members.  
For instance, small loans are provided to the members for releasing mortgaged land, meeting working capital needs, for acquiring assets like sewing machines, handlooms, cattle etc.
3. Since non-repayment of loans is dealt with seriously by group members, therefore banks are willing to lend to the poor women when organized in SHGs, even though they have no collateral as such. Thus, the SHGs help women to become financially self reliant.
4. The regular meetings of the group provide a platform to discuss and act on a variety of social issues such as health, nutrition, domestic violence etc.

**46. What are the two categories of sources of credit? Mention four features of each.**

**Ans:** The two sources of credit are formal sources and informal sources:

**Formal sources of credit:**

1. Banks and cooperative societies fall under the formal sector. One can obtain loans from banks or cooperative societies.

2. The Reserve Bank of India supervises the functioning of formal sources of loans.

3. Bank loans require documentation and collateral (collateral is an asset such as land, building, vehicle, livestock, deposits with the bank, etc. This is used as a guarantee to the lender until the loan is paid back.

4. Formal sources cannot charge any rate of interest from the borrowers according to their whims.

**Informal sources of credit:**

1. In the informal sector money can be borrowed from a person, friend, relative, moneylender, traders, employers, etc.

2. There is no organization that checks or supervises the activities of lenders in the informal sector.

3. Loans from informal sources do not require any such collateral.

4. They charge a very high rate of interest on loans as they do not require any collateral.

**47. What is credit? Explain with an example, how credit plays a vital and positive role for development.**

**Ans:** Credit means loans. It refers to an agreement in which the lender supplies the borrower with money, goods or services in return for the promise of future repayment.

1. Cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's growth and economic development. Credit is in great demand for various kinds of economic activities—big or small investments, to set up business, buying cars, houses, etc.

2. In rural areas credit helps in the development of agriculture by providing funds to farmers to buy seeds, fertilizers, expensive pesticides.

3. Manufacturers need credit for buying raw material or to meet ongoing expenditure of production. Credit helps in the purchase of plant, machinery, equipment, etc.

4. Some people may need to borrow for illness, marriages etc.

Thus, cheap and affordable credit is crucial for the country's growth and economic development.

**Source Based Questions :**

**(1+1+2=4)**

**47. The following table shows the sources of credit for rural households in India -**

Source	Share
Moneylenders	30%
Cooperative societies	27%
Commercial banks	25%
Others (traders, Relatives, etc)	18%

**On the basis of the above table, answer the following.**

1. What is the share of formal sector in the total credit?

**Ans:** 52%

2. Suggest two measures for improving the share of formal sector in total credit.

**Ans.** (b) The measures can be

(i) The rural people having similar occupations can be asked to organise themselves into Self Help Groups, which will ultimately enable them to get loans from the formal sector.

ii) More bank branches should be opened in rural areas which should assist borrowers in completing the documentation required for loans, as many rural people are unable to fulfil this essential requirement of the formal sector.

3. Why is the moneylender still the largest single source of credit?

**Ans-** The moneylender is still the largest single source of credit because he does not require extensive documentation or collateral (both of which are difficult to provide by rural borrowers). Further, he is flexible in the repayment schedule, in case of any problem. In addition, moneylenders are usually available in the rural areas, whereas formal sector sources of finance are few and far between in such areas.

## Chapter 20. Globalization And Indian Economy

**Globalization** refers to the integration of the domestic economy with the economies of the world.

\*An **MNC** is a company that owns and controls production in more than one nation. MNCs set up offices and factories for production in regions where they can get cheap labour and other resource **Activities of most MNCs involve** ---substantial trade in goods , services, investment , technology and also through the movement of people

\* **Foreign Investment** is the investment made by MNCs

\***liberalisation**-Removing barriers or restrictions set up by the government. With Liberalisation of trade ,businesses are allowed to make decisions freely about what they wish to import or export.

\***Trade Barrier**-Tax on import is an example of trade barrier. Government can use trade barrier to increase or decrease foreign trade, to decide what kind of goods and how much of each, should come into the country

**.GLOBALISAT -Globalisation** is the process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries.

MNCs are playing a major role in the globalisation process. More and more goods and services, investments, and technology are moving between countries

### **FACTORS THAT HAVE ENABLED GLOBALISATION**

1)**Technology** : Rapid improvement in technology has been one major factor that has stimulated the globalisation process. For instance, the past fifty years have seen several improvements in transportation technology. This has made much faster delivery of goods across long distances possible at lower costs. For example -use of containers in transportation of goods has led to huge reduction in cost and increase speed in reaching the market .

2) **Developments in information and communication technology**: In recent times, technology in the areas of telecommunications, computers, Internet has been changing rapidly.

**Telecommunication facilities** — telegraph, telephone including mobile phones, fax are now used to contact one another quickly around the world, to access information instantly and communicate from remote areas .

**Teleconferences** help in saving frequent long trips across the globe.

**Internet** also allows us to send instant electronic mail(e.mail)

**Information technology** has also played an important role in spreading out production of services across countries. Orders are placed through internet, designing is done on computers, even payment for designing and printing can be arranged through internet

3)**Liberalization of Foreign trade and Foreign investment policies** has helped the globalization process by making foreign trade and investment easier. Earlier, several developing countries had placed **barriers and restrictions** on imports and investments from abroad to protect domestic production. However, to improve the quality of domestic goods, these countries have removed the barriers. Thus, **liberalization** has led to a further spread of globalization because now businesses are allowed to make their own decisions on imports and exports. This has led to a deeper integration of national economies into one conglomerate whole.

### **Multiple Choice Questions (MCQs) (1)**

(1) **Globalisation is a process of slow integration or interconnection between countries. State whether true or false.**

a) False

b) True

**Answer:** Option (a)

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ have led to a huge reduction in port handling costs and increased the speed with which exports can reach markets.

- a) Containers                      b) Cranes                      c) Elevators                      d) None of the above

**Answer:** Option (a)

**3) Removing barriers or restrictions set by the government is known as \_\_\_\_\_.**

- a) Globalisation                      b) Disinvestment                      c) Privatisation                      d) Liberalisation

**Answer:** Option (d)

**4) Governments can use----- to increase or decrease (regulate) foreign trade and to decide what kinds of goods and how much of each should come into the country.**

- a) trade barriers                      b) foreign investment                      c)foreign trade                      d)Import

**Answer:** Option (a) trade barriers

**5)Factors that have enabled Globalisation are \_\_\_\_\_.**

- a)Technology                                      b) Information and communication technology  
c) Libralisation                                      d) All of the above

**Answer:** Option (d) All of the above

**6) The last two decades of globalization have seen rapid movement of \_\_\_\_\_ -**

- a) Goods, services and people between countries.  
b) Goods, services and investments between countries.  
c) Goods, services, investments, technology and people between countries  
d) Goods, investments and people between countries.

**Answer :** Option (c)

**7) Globalization will result by connecting countries s**

- a) Less competition among producers.  
b) More competition among producers.  
c) No change in competition among manufacturers.

**Answer-** Option (b)

**Very Short Answer Type Question-**

**(2 marks)**

**(8) Why do MNCs set up their offices and factories in those regions where they get cheap labour and other resources?**

**ANS:**MNCs set up offices and factories for products in regions where they can get cheap labour and other resources so that—

- the cost of production is low
- the MNCs can earn greater profits.

**(9) What do you understand by the term ‘Foreign Direct Investment’?**

**ANS :** FDI is the investment of foreign capital in the economic and productive activities of a country by foreign companies or MNCs with the aim of expanding capacity and production to earn profits

**(10) Why had the Indian Government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment after independence.**

**ANS:**The Indian government after independence had put barriers to foreign trade and investment.

- This was done to protect the producers within the country from foreign competition.
- To protect the Indian economy from foreign infiltration in industries affecting the economic growth of the country as planned

**(11) Why is ‘tax’ on imports known as a trade barrier?**

**ANS:** Tax on imports is known as a trade barrier because it increases the price of imported commodities. It is called a barrier because some restriction has been set up.

**(12) What is Globalisation ?**

**Ans.- Globalisation** is the process of rapid integration or interconnection between countries MNCs are playing a major role in the globalisation process. More and more goods and services, investments, and technology are moving between countries.

**(13) What do you understand by liberalization of foreign trade ?**

**Ans.-Libralisation** means removing unnecessary trade restriction and making the economy more competitive . for ex.-tax on import is a trade barrier .,libralisation removes those problems and make foreign trade easily

**(14) What is meant by trade barrier?**

**ANS:** A trade barrier refers to any regulation or policy that restricts international trade, especially tariffs, quotas, licenses etc.

**Short Answer Type Question -**

**(3marks)**

**(15) Explain any three factors that have enabled globalisation.?**

Ans: Three factors are -

- 1)**Rapid improvement in Transportation Technology:** This had made possible much faster delivery of goods across long distances at lower cost.
- 2)**Development in Information and Communication technology:** It has played a major role in spreading out production of services across countries.
- 3)**Liberalisation:** Countries have removed many of the barriers to foreign trade and foreign investments and then promoted globalisation.

**(16) Why did the government of India wish to remove barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment starting around 1991?**

**Ans:**The government decided that the time had come for Indian producers to compete with producers around the globe.

It felt that competition would improve the performance of producers within the country.

Power full International Organisations supported this decision

**(17) How technology enabled Globalisation ?**

Ans.- Rapid improvement in technology has been one major factor that has stimulated the globalisation process.

1. This has made much faster delivery of goods across long distances possible at lower costs. For example - use of containers in transportation of goods has led to huge reduction in cost and increase speed in reaching the market.
2. Now people can pass and receive information with a click of button

**(18) What will happen if government of India put a tax on any item ?**

Ans.-The following will be the consequences-

1. Buyers will have to pay higher price for the imported products which will include import custom duty.
2. The imported product will not be as cheap as it is available in india
3. It will reduce import of products .

**Large Answer Type Question-**

**(5 marks )**

**(19) How has information and communication technology increased the pace of globalisation?**

**Explain.**

**Ans.** Information and communication technology increased the pace of globalisation. Information and communication technology (IT) has played a major role in spreading out production of services.

In recent times, technology in the areas of telecommunications, computers, Internet has been changing rapidly.

Telecommunication facilities (tele- graph, telephone including mobile phones, fax) are used to contact one another around the world, to access information instantly, and to communicate from remote areas. This has been facilitated by satellite communication devices.

Computers have now entered almost every field of activity. You might have also ventured into the amazing world of internet, where you can obtain and share information on almost anything we want to know. IT has created various new opportunities

**Case Based Question**

**(1+1+2=4)**

**(20) Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows**

The Indian government, after Independence, had put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment. This was considered necessary to protect the producers within the country from foreign competition. Industries were just coming up in the 1950s and 1960s, and competition from imports at that stage would not have allowed these industries to come up. Thus, India allowed imports of only essential items such as machinery, fertilisers, petroleum etc. Note that all developed countries, during the early stages of development, have

given protection to domestic producers through a variety of means. Starting around 1991, some far reaching changes in policy were made in India. The government decided that the time had come for Indian producers to compete with producers around the globe. It felt that competition would improve the performance of producers within the country since they would have to improve their quality. This decision was supported by powerful international organisations

**1.why the Indian government put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment?**

**Ans:** The Indian government, after Independence, had put barriers to foreign trade and foreign investment. This was considered necessary to protect the producers within the country from foreign competition.

**2.which items were allowed to imports by the Indian government ?**

**Ans:** India allowed imports of only essential items such as machinery, fertilisers, petroleum etc.

**3.what was the major changes in policy after 1991?**

**Ans :**After 1991, some far reaching changes in policy were made in India. The government decided that the time had come for Indian producers to compete with producers around the globe. It felt that competition would improve the performance of producers within the country.

**(21)Read the extract given below and answer the questions that follows:**

A news magazine published for London readers is to be designed and printed in Delhi. The text of the magazine is sent through Internet to the Delhi office. The designers in the Delhi office get orders on how to design the magazine from the office in London using telecommunication facilities. The designing is done on a computer. After printing, the magazines are sent by air to London. Even the payment of money for designing and printing from a bank in London to a bank in Delhi is done instantly through the Internet (e-banking)

**(1) choose and write the words describing the use of technology in production from the given example?**

Ans.-Internet, computer, telecommunication, net banking.

**(2) How the payment is done after the work?**

Ans.-Payment of money is done through internet (E -banking)

**(3) How is information technology connected with globalisation?**

Ans.-Information technology relates to telecommunication facilities, internet services, on line communication etc.IT helps the transfer of information, data, process information etc.in very quick time. With the help of IT, business tasks can be performed anywhere in the world through video conferencing, email, web-based chatting and data sharing .